



This is a digital copy of a book that was preserved for generations on library shelves before it was carefully scanned by Google as part of a project to make the world's books discoverable online.

It has survived long enough for the copyright to expire and the book to enter the public domain. A public domain book is one that was never subject to copyright or whose legal copyright term has expired. Whether a book is in the public domain may vary country to country. Public domain books are our gateways to the past, representing a wealth of history, culture and knowledge that's often difficult to discover.

Marks, notations and other marginalia present in the original volume will appear in this file - a reminder of this book's long journey from the publisher to a library and finally to you.

Usage guidelines

Google is proud to partner with libraries to digitize public domain materials and make them widely accessible. Public domain books belong to the public and we are merely their custodians. Nevertheless, this work is expensive, so in order to keep providing this resource, we have taken steps to prevent abuse by commercial parties, including placing technical restrictions on automated querying.

We also ask that you:

- + *Make non-commercial use of the files* We designed Google Book Search for use by individuals, and we request that you use these files for personal, non-commercial purposes.
- + *Refrain from automated querying* Do not send automated queries of any sort to Google's system: If you are conducting research on machine translation, optical character recognition or other areas where access to a large amount of text is helpful, please contact us. We encourage the use of public domain materials for these purposes and may be able to help.
- + *Maintain attribution* The Google "watermark" you see on each file is essential for informing people about this project and helping them find additional materials through Google Book Search. Please do not remove it.
- + *Keep it legal* Whatever your use, remember that you are responsible for ensuring that what you are doing is legal. Do not assume that just because we believe a book is in the public domain for users in the United States, that the work is also in the public domain for users in other countries. Whether a book is still in copyright varies from country to country, and we can't offer guidance on whether any specific use of any specific book is allowed. Please do not assume that a book's appearance in Google Book Search means it can be used in any manner anywhere in the world. Copyright infringement liability can be quite severe.

About Google Book Search

Google's mission is to organize the world's information and to make it universally accessible and useful. Google Book Search helps readers discover the world's books while helping authors and publishers reach new audiences. You can search through the full text of this book on the web at <http://books.google.com/>

4600

KPD2016

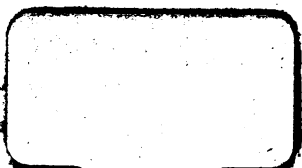


600 —
1200 —
1800 —
2400 —
3000 —

9000 —
2000 —

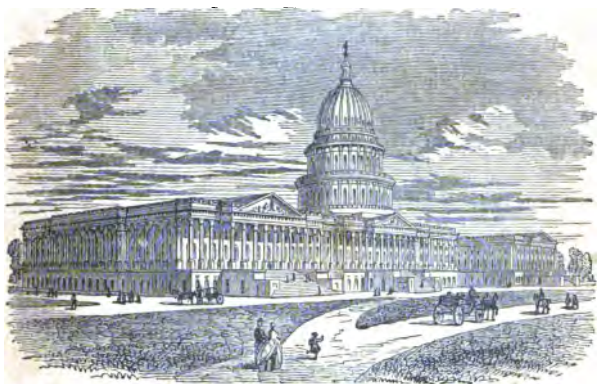
10000 —
10000 —

20000 —



HISTORY
OF
THE UNITED STA
FROM THE
DISCOVERY OF AMERICA
TO
THE CLOSE OF THE YEAR 1862.

For the use of Schools.



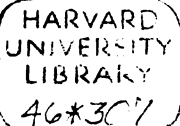
CAPITOL AT WASHINGTON.

COMPILED FROM AUTHENTIC SOURCES
BY WILLIAM ROBERTS.

PHILADELPHIA:
SOWER, BARNES & CO.

460
KPD201

KPD2016



Entered, according to Act of Congress, in the year 1861, by

WILLIAM ROBERTS,

in the Clerk's Office of the District Court of the United States, in and for the
Eastern District of Pennsylvania.

Entered, according to Act of Congress, in the year 1863, by

WILLIAM ROBERTS,

in the Clerk's Office of the District Court of the United States, in and for the
Eastern District of Pennsylvania.

MEARS & DUSENBERRY, STEREOTYPERS.

COLLINS, PRINTER.

P R E F A C E.

THE compiler of the following pages, during his long experience as a teacher, often felt the necessity of a text-book which should give a correct and lucid exposition of American history.

He found the youthful memory burdened with extraneous matter, clogged with abstractions, and wearied with the petty details of colonial government.

If "History is Philosophy teaching by example," it should appear to us in a pure and truthful garb, unsullied by party prejudice or sectarian bigotry.

It should not be a vehicle of misrepresentation and calumny, nor a channel for unmerited detraction or fulsome praise.

Contemporary writers of a nation's history too often impart to passing events the bias of their own minds, and, therefore, most historical records come to us tinted with the writer's aversions or partialities.

The writer of a text-book of history intended for Ameri-

can youth, soon to become American citizens, cannot be too careful in the selection of facts not distorted by faction or flattery.

In the treatise now presented to the public, the compiler has striven to avoid the errors arising from sectarian or partisan statements, and to present the records of history drawn from the most reliable sources.

He has devoted much time and labor in consulting the best authorities, and recorded nothing which is not substantiated by standard historians.

In this compilation he has ignored sect and party. Facts only are presented, and the mind of the youthful student left in freedom as to the principles and motives of the actors in this grand drama, who pass in review before him.

This work is divided into sections, with numbered paragraphs. The first section gives a brief account of the early discoveries and attempted settlements. The next section embraces the history of the settlements of the seventeenth century, and the prominent events of the thirteen original colonies. This is followed by the French War, the American Revolution, the Confederation of States, the adoption of the Constitution, and the Federal Union; with a succinct account of every Presidential Administration to the close of the year 1862.

PHILADELPHIA, 1863.

CONTENTS.

DISCOVERIES OF THE FIFTEENTH AND SIXTEENTH CENTURIES.

Discovery of America—Cabot's voyage—Cortereal—Juan Ponce de Leon—Discovery of Florida—Verrazani—Cartier—Ferdinand de Soto—Discovery of the Mississippi—Quebec—Attempted settlements in Florida—Gilbert's expedition—Raleigh's attempts to establish colonies Page 13

THE SETTLEMENTS OF THE SEVENTEENTH CENTURY.

Gosnold's voyage—Cape Cod—The London Company—The Plymouth Company—Newport's voyage—Settlement of Jamestown—Captain John Smith—First Legislature—Slavery—Indian hostilities—Sir John Harvey—Freedom under Cromwell—Restoration of the monarchy 22

MASSACHUSETTS.—Settlement on the Kennebec—Captain Smith names the country New England—Settlement of Plymouth—Salem—Colony of Massachusetts Bay—Roger Williams—Union of New England colonies—Indian war—Sir Edmund Andross governor—King William's war 27

NEW YORK.—Henry Hudson's voyage—Settlement of Manhattan—New Netherlands—Algonquin war—Surrender to the English—New York—Albany—Charter of Liberties—Imprisonment of Andross—Earl of Bellamont—Lord Cornbury 81

NEW HAMPSHIRE. —Settlement of Dover—Portsmouth—Exeter— Assembly at Portsmouth—Governor Cranfield—Samuel Allen governor	34
NEW JERSEY. —Cape May—Fort Nassau—Bergen—Assignment to Berkeley and Carteret—Elizabethtown—Quit-rents demanded— Salem—Byllinge, proprietor—Sells West New Jersey to the Friends—Carteret proprietor of East New Jersey—Sells his share to William Penn and Friends—Union of the two Jerseys—Lord Cornbury governor—Lewis Morris governor of New Jersey	36
MARYLAND. —Settlement on the Patuxent—Kent Island—Sir George Calvert—Settlement of St. Mary's—William Clayborne—Indian War—Philip Calvert—Character of Lord Baltimore—Annapolis the capital—Changes of government in Maryland	39
DELAWARE. —Settlement at Cape Henlopen—Lewes—Massacre of the Dutch settlers—Swedish expedition—Purchase of land— Settlement at Christiana Creek—Tinicum—Fort Cassimir, on the site of New Castle—Surrender to the Dutch—Conquest of the Dutch—Delaware a dependency of New York—Conveyed to William Penn	42
CONNECTICUT. —Fort at Hartford—Earl of Warwick proprietor of the territory—Lord Say and Seal—Trading-house at Windsor— Windsor and Weathersfield—Rev. Thomas Hooker settles Hart- ford—Pequod war—Settlement of New Haven—Government of the colony—New charter from Charles II.—Fort at Saybrook— Charter demanded and concealed—Charter Oak—Governor Fletcher—Resolution of Captain Wadsworth	45
RHODE ISLAND. —Settlement at Providence—Portsmouth—New- port—Roger Williams obtains a charter	48
NORTH CAROLINA. —First settlement in North Carolina—Lord Clarendon's charter—Locke's Constitution—Culpepper's insur- rection—Sothel's government—John Archdale—Tuscarora In- dians make war	50

SOUTH CAROLINA. —Settlement at Port Royal—Settlement on Ashley River—Charleston—Slavery—Colleton governor—Seth Sothel—Archdale's government—War with Florida—Siege of St. Augustine—Defeat of Indians—Yamasee war—Alliance with the Cherokees	53
--	----

PENNSYLVANIA. —Swedish settlements of Pennsylvania—Grant to William Penn—Landing of English settlers—Penn lands at New Castle—Landing in Philadelphia—The first Assembly—Penn's return to England—Colonel Fletcher governor—Penn's return to Pennsylvania—New frame of government—Death of William Penn	57
--	----

GEORGIA. —General Oglethorpe—Savannah—European settlers—George Whitefield—Fort St. George built—War with Spain—Invasion of Georgia—Oglethorpe returns to England	61
---	----

COLONIAL HISTORY.

FROM THE COMMENCEMENT OF THE EIGHTEENTH CENTURY TO THE END OF THE FRENCH WAR IN 1763. —Queen Anne's war—King George's war—Washington's embassy—Fort Duquesne built—Battle at the Great Meadows—Fort Necessity—Braddock's defeat—Expedition against Nova Scotia—Fort Edward built—Battle at Lake George—Fort William Henry—Siege of Louisbourg—Attack on Ticonderoga—Fort Frontenac—General Forbes sent against Duquesne—Siege of Oswego—Seizure of Ticonderoga and Crown Point—General Wolfe attacks Quebec—Montcalm defends the city—Defeat of the French—Death of Wolfe—Of Montcalm—Treaty of peace—France surrenders her possessions in America	64
---	----

FROM THE FRENCH WAR TO THE REVOLUTION. —Pontiac's war—The colonies taxed—The Stamp Act—Troops sent to Boston—Boston Massacre—Duty on tea—Boston Port Bill—Meeting of a General Congress—General Gage military governor	79
---	----

THE REVOLUTION.

Battle of Lexington—Ethan Allen's expedition—Seizure of Ticonderoga—Colonel Warner—Colonel Arnold—The Continental Congress—George Washington commander-in-chief—Bunker Hill—Arnold's expedition to Canada—Montgomery captures Montreal—Battle of Quebec—Death of Montgomery—Lord Dunmore 85

EVENTS OF 1776.—The siege of Boston—American troops evacuate Canada—Attack on Charleston—Sullivan's Island—Declaration of Independence—General Howe lands on Staten Island—Battle of Long Island—White Plains—Capture of Fort Washington—Fort Lee—Retreat through New Jersey—General Lee taken prisoner—Battle of Trenton 93

EVENTS OF 1777.—Battle of Princeton—Burning of Danbury—Attack on Sag Harbor—General St. Clair abandons Ticonderoga—Battle of Hubbardton—Oriskany—Siege of Fort Schuyler—Battle of Bennington—Battle of Brandywine—Massacre at Paoli—Capture of Philadelphia—Battle of Stillwater—Saratoga—Burgoyne's surrender—Battle of Germantown—Fort Mercer—Valley Forge 99

EVENTS OF 1778.—British leave Philadelphia—Battle of Monmouth—General Lee—Siege of Newport—Massacre at Tappan—Wyoming—Expedition sent to invade Georgia—Capture of Savannah—Winter quarters at Middlebrook 108

EVENTS OF 1779.—The war in South Carolina and Georgia—In Virginia—In Connecticut—Capture of Stony Point—The fort at Paulus Hook—General Sullivan's expedition against the Indians—The squadron under Captain Paul Jones—French fleet under Count D'Estaing—Siege of the British at Savannah—Count Pulaski—Sergeant Jasper 112

EVENTS OF 1780.—Winter quarters at Morristown—Siege of

Charleston—General Lincoln capitulates—Waxhaw—General Gates—Battle of Sanders' Creek—Death of De Kalb—Colonel Sumter—Tarleton—Treason of Arnold—Interview between him and André—Arrest of the latter—Flight of Arnold—Death of André—Battle of King's Mountain—General Marion—Greene supersedes Gates—Great Britain at war with Holland, France, and Spain	116
--	-----

EVENTS OF 1781, AND CLOSE OF THE REVOLUTION.—Pennsylvania troops demand redress—Arnold invades Virginia—Capture of Richmond—General Greene at Charlotte, North Carolina—Battle of the Cowpens—Morgan's retreat—Battle of Guilford Court House—Hobkirk's Hill—Capture of Forts Watson, Motte, and Granby—Lord Cornwallis takes command in Virginia—Pursued by General La Fayette—Fortifies Yorktown—Arnold's invasion of Connecticut—Burning of New London—Battle of Eutaw Springs—French fleet in the Chesapeake—Siege of Yorktown—Surrender of Cornwallis—Washington at Newburg—Treaty of peace—New York evacuated—Washington resigns his commission	125
---	-----

THE CONFEDERATION.

Shay's Insurrection—Federal Convention—Adoption of the Constitution—The first election	135
--	-----

THE FEDERAL CONSTITUTION.

WASHINGTON'S ADMINISTRATION.—Meeting of Congress—Heads of departments—The public debt—District of Columbia—Harmer's expedition against the Indians—Seat of government removed to Philadelphia—Vermont and Kentucky admitted—French Revolution—Proclamation of neutrality—Genet—St. Clair's defeat—General Wayne's success—Treaty with the Indians—Jay's Treaty—Insurrection in Pennsylvania—Treaty with Spain—Algiers—Tennessee admitted—President's Farewell Address	138
---	-----

JOHN ADAMS' ADMINISTRATION.—Trouble with France—Prospect of war—Washington appointed commander-in-chief—Capture of a French frigate—Death of Washington—Removal of seat of government to Washington City—Treaty of peace with France—Mr. Jefferson elected President 146

THOMAS JEFFERSON'S ADMINISTRATION.—Tripoli declares war—Ohio admitted—Purchase of Louisiana—Loss of the frigate Philadelphia—Exploit of Decatur—Eaton's expedition against Tripoli—Treaty of peace—Seizure of American vessels by England and France—Burr's trial—Attack on the frigate Chesapeake—"Orders in Council"—"Milan Decree"—Embargo—Mr. Madison elected President 149

JAMES MADISON'S ADMINISTRATION.—Frigate President and the Little Belt—Battle of Tippecanoe—Louisiana admitted—War declared against Great Britain—Hull's invasion of Canada—Surrender of Detroit—Battle on the Niagara—Naval battles—Essex and Alert—Constitution and Guerriere—Wasp and Frolic—United States and Macedonian—Battle of Frenchtown—Siege of Fort Meigs—Battle at York, Upper Canada—Sackett's Harbor—War with the Creeks—Naval battles—Hornet and Peacock—Chesapeake and Shannon—Perry's victory on Lake Erie—Argus and Pelican—British squadron in Chesapeake Bay—Battle on the river Thames—Capture of Fort Erie—Battle of Chippewa—Lundy's Lane—Siege of Fort Erie—The Essex, Commodore Porter, captured—Frolic captured by the Orpheus—Peacock and Epervier—The Wasp and Reindeer—Capture of Washington—Battle of Plattsburg—McDonough's victory on Lake Champlain—The Wasp and Reindeer—Wasp lost at sea—Attack on Baltimore—General Jackson seizes Pensacola—Battle of New Orleans—Hartford Convention—The frigate President captured—Treaty of peace—More naval engagements—War with Algiers—Treaty—Bank of the United States—Indiana admitted—Mr. Monroe elected 155

JAMES MONROE'S ADMINISTRATION.—President's tour—Mississippi admitted—Seminole war—General Jackson captures towns in

Florida—Illinois, Alabama, Maine, and Missouri admitted—
Florida ceded to the United States—Expedition against the
pirates—Visit of General La Fayette—John Quincy Adams
elected President 179

JOHN QUINCY ADAMS' ADMINISTRATION.—General La Fayette re-
turns to France—Congress make an appropriation—Deaths of
Adams and Jefferson—General Jackson elected President 184

ANDREW JACKSON'S ADMINISTRATION.—Death of James Monroe—
Black Hawk's war—Cholera in the army—Treaties with the
Indians—Nullification—"Compromise Bill"—Debt due by
France remaining unpaid—Fears of a war—Amicable settle-
ment—Seminole war—General Scott sent to Florida—"Specie
Circular"—"Distribution Act"—Arkansas admitted—Death of
James Madison—Michigan admitted—Martin Van Buren elected
President 186

MARTIN VAN BUREN'S ADMINISTRATION.—Seizure of Osceola—
Battle of Lake Okeechobee—Insurrection in Canada—Proclama-
tion of neutrality—General Harrison elected President 191

HARRISON'S AND TYLER'S ADMINISTRATIONS.—The President calls
a meeting of Congress—Death of President Harrison—John
Tyler President—Meeting of Congress—Settlement of the north-
eastern boundary—Prospects of civil war in Rhode Island—
"Suffrage Party"—"Law and Order Party"—Troops sent to
preserve the peace—Bursting of the "Peacemaker"—Death of
Mr. Upshur and Mr. Gilmore—Annexation of Texas—Admission
of Florida 198

JAMES K. POLK'S ADMINISTRATION.—General Taylor sent to Texas
with an army—Death of General Jackson—Admission of Texas—
Oregon—Boundary line—Iowa admitted—Mexican hostilities—
Battles of Palo Alto and Resaca de la Palma—General Taylor
takes Matamoras—Monterey—Capture of California—New
Mexico—General Scott captures Vera Cruz—Battle of Buena
Vista—Battles of Cerro Gordo, Contreras, Churubusco, El Mo-

linos del Rey, Chapultepec—Occupation of the city of Mexico—
Treaty of peace—Transfer of California and New Mexico—
Death of John Quincy Adams—Wisconsin admitted—General
Taylor elected President 196

TAYLOR'S AND FILLMORE'S ADMINISTRATIONS.—Great emigration
to California—Application to be admitted as a state—Compro-
mise measures—Death of the President—Succeeded by Millard
Fillmore—California admitted—Purchase of tracts of land—
Kossuth—Death of Henry Clay—Daniel Webster—Mission to
Japan—Franklin Pierce elected President 208

FRANKLIN PIERCE'S ADMINISTRATION.—Mesilla Valley claimed by
Mexico—Conveyed to the United States by treaty—Nebraska
and Kansas—Repeal of the Missouri Compromise—Dismissal
of Mr. Crampton and British consuls—Civil war in Kansas—
James Buchanan elected President 211

JAMES BUCHANAN'S ADMINISTRATION.—The Mormons refuse obe-
dience to the laws of the United States—Troops sent to Utah—
Salt Lake City—Troops withdrawn—The President recommends
the admission of Kansas under the Lecompton Constitution—A
bill passes both houses, but is rejected by the people—Minne-
sota admitted—Oregon admitted—Visit of the Japanese am-
bassadors—Visit of the Prince of Wales—Mr. Lincoln elected
President—Secession of South Carolina—Major Anderson evacu-
ates Fort Moultrie—Withdrawal to Fort Sumter—State troops
take Fort Moultrie and Castle Pinckney—General Cass resigns—
Messrs. Cobb, Floyd, and Thompson resign—The forts in
Georgia, North Carolina, and Alabama seized by the secession-
ists—Siege of Fort Sumter—Secession of five states—"Star of
the West"—Kansas admitted—Peace Conference—Convention
of seceding states—General Twiggs 218

ABRAHAM LINCOLN'S ADMINISTRATION.—Inauguration—List of se-
ceded states—Fort Pickens—Bombardment of Fort Sumter—
The President calls for troops—First arrival of soldiers in Wash-
ington—Massachusetts troops attacked in Baltimore—Pennsyl-

vania troops—Secession of Virginia—Destruction of public buildings at Harper's Ferry—Navy Yard at Portsmouth destroyed—Secession of Arkansas, Tennessee, and North Carolina—General Butler occupies Baltimore—Batteries on the Elizabeth River—Sewall's Point—Troops on Arlington Heights—Assassination of Colonel Ellsworth—Death of Stephen A. Douglas—Surprise of rebels at Philippi—Colonel Kelly wounded—Expedition sent against the rebels at Great Bethel—Failure to take a battery—Retreat—Death of Lieutenant Greble—Of Major Winthrop—Battle of Booneville—Attempt of Captain Ward to erect a battery at Matthias Point—Attack by the rebels—Death of Captain Ward—Battle of Falling Waters—Battle at Rich Mountain—Colonel Pegram surrenders—Battle of St. George—General Garnett killed—General McDowell at Fairfax—Centreville—Battle of Bull Run—Retreat of General McDowell—Colonels Cameron, Slocum, and Fowler killed at Bull Run—Battle at Wilson's Creek—Death of General Lyon—General Sigel takes command—Expedition under Commodore Stringham and General Butler—Capture of Forts Clark and Hatteras—Attack on the fort at Lexington—Brave defence by Colonel Mulligan—Battle of Bolivar—Ball's Bluff—Death of Colonel Baker—Lexington recaptured—Resignation of General Scott—General McClellan appointed his successor—Dupont's Expedition—Capture of forts at Hilton Head—Beaufort—Arrest of Slidell and Mason . . . 221

EVENTS OF 1862.—Battle of Somerset—General Zollickoffer killed—Surrender of Fort Henry—Expedition against North Carolina—Capture of Roanoke Island—Destruction of the rebel fleet—Fort Donelson bombarded—Surrenders—Submission of Nashville—General Banks crosses the Potomac—Naval battle near Newport News—The Merrimac—The Monitor—Commodore Dupont captures Brunswick and Fernandina—Fort Clinch—St. Mary's—Battle of Pea Ridge—Evacuation of New Madrid—Siege of Island No. 10—Expedition against Beaufort—Surrender of St. Augustine—Battle of Pittsburgh Landing—Surrender of Fort Pulaski—Fort Macon—New Orleans surrenders to General Butler—Baton Rouge taken—Bombardment of Fort St. Philip—Fort Jackson—General McClellan embarks with his army—Takes possession of

Yorktown—Battle of Williamsburg—Battle at West Point—Attack on Sewall's Point—General Wool's expedition to Norfolk—Surrender of the city—The Merrimac destroyed—Sewall's Point and Craney Island abandoned—Troops cross the Chickahominy—Attack on Colonel Kenley—Battle at Corinth—Town evacuated—Occupied by General Pope—Battle of Fair Oaks—Evacuation of Forts Pillow, Wright, and the city of Pensacola—Fort Barrancas—Surrender of Memphis—General Negley defeats the enemy in Tennessee—Fremont pursues Jackson—Battle of Cross Keys—Contest at the Shenandoah—Battle at White Oak Swamp—Battle of Mechanicsville—"Gaines's Mills"—Savage Station—White Oak Swamp—Turkey Island—McClellan's army at the James River—Malvern Hills—General Pope in command of the army—Three hundred thousand troops called into service—March of General Curtis—General Halleck appointed commander-in-chief—Death of Van Buren—Battle at the Rapidan—Cedar Mountain—Attack on Baton Rouge—Death of General Williams—Army moved from Harrison's Landing to Williamsburg—Battle of Bull Run—Fairfax—Centreville—Junction of armies—General McClellan commander—Death of Generals Kearney, Stevens, and Taylor—Rebel army in Maryland—Battle of South Mountain—Death of General Reno—Surrender of Harper's Ferry—Battle of Antietam—Rebel army crosses the Potomac—Pursued by General Pleasanton—Harper's Ferry evacuated—Bombardment of Natchez—Battle of Iuka—Capture of Mumfordsville—Invasion of Pennsylvania—Battle of Corinth—Hatchie River—Battle of Perryville—General McClellan relieved—Burnside appointed—Galveston taken—General Burnside's army opposite Fredericksburg—Steamer Alabama—Indian massacres—Battle of Fredericksburg—Deaths of Generals Bayard and Jackson—General Burnside removes his army—Report of killed and wounded 288

HISTORY

OF

THE UNITED STATES.

DISCOVERIES OF THE 15TH AND 16TH CENTURIES.

1492. ^A 1. THE vast continents of North and South America were unknown to the civilized world previous to the year 1492. At that time the genius and persevering efforts of Christopher Columbus led the way to those great discoveries, which have resulted in the settlement of the United States, and other countries in the Western Hemisphere.

1497. 2. The spirit of adventure was now awakened in Europe, and numerous expeditions were sent out to make discoveries and form settlements. Among these, the voyage of the Cabots is most worthy of notice. In 1497, John Cabot embarked with his son Sebastian, from Bristol, England, and discovered the American Continent far to the north, in the dreary inhospitable regions of Labrador. A second voyage was made by Sebastian Cabot

1498. the next year, in which he explored the American coast, landed at many places, and returned to

England. He sketched maps of the places visited, and wrote an account of his adventures, all of which have been lost to posterity.

3. The glory of the discovery of the Western Continent belongs to the Cabots. They reached the mainland fourteen months previously to the discovery by Columbus of the southern portion, and two years before Amerigo Vespucci made his voyage, and assumed honors to which he had no rightful claim.

4. Gasper Cortereal was appointed commander of an expedition fitted out in Portugal, and, in 1501, sailed along the American coast for more than six hundred miles. He seized a number of the natives, carried them off, and sold them as slaves, but in a subsequent voyage fell a victim to his avarice and cruelty, being slain in a skirmish with the Indians.

5. In the year 1512, Juan Ponce de Leon embarked at Porto Rico with a squadron of seven ships fitted out at his own expense, on a voyage of discovery. On Easter Sunday, called by the Spaniards Pascua Florida, land was seen and the country was named Florida, from the day on which it was discovered, and its blooming appearance.

6. The Spaniards who had made preparations for a colony in the "Land of Flowers," were attacked by the Indians with the utmost fury, many were killed, the survivors compelled to flee to their ships, and Ponce himself, mortally wounded, returned to Cuba to die.

7. The French government, anxious to make settlements in the New World, the coasts of which were frequented by the hardy fishermen of Normandy and Brittany, sent out John Verrazani, in a single caravel, on a voyage of discovery. He came on the coast in the latitude of Wilmington, sailed along the shores of North Carolina,

New Jersey, and New York, remained for fifteen days in the harbor of Newport, and then explored the whole coast of New England to Nova Scotia.

1534. 8. In 1534, James Cartier, with two ships, left the harbor of St. Malo in France, and in twenty days came to the island of Newfoundland. He then crossed the gulf, and entered a bay which he named Des Chaleurs. He then sailed along the coast, and, entering the inlet of Gaspé, he took possession in the name of the French king, by rearing a lofty cross, with a shield and the lilies of his native soil. Leaving this place, he sailed up the great river St. Lawrence for a considerable distance, and then returned, after a successful voyage, to St. Malo.

1535. * 9. The following year, Cartier, with three ships, set out on another voyage, and, passing to the west of Newfoundland and through the Gulf of St. Lawrence, north of Anacosti, he ascended the river as far as the island of Orleans. Here, Cartier, leaving his vessels safely moored, proceeded in a boat to the chief Indian settlement, which lay at the foot of a hill which he climbed. Pleased with the beauty of the surrounding prospect, he called this Mont Real, a name which has since extended to the most flourishing city of Canada East. They passed the winter in the St. Lawrence, and in the spring, after solemnly taking possession of the country, and declaring Francis to be its rightful king, they returned to St. Malo.

1539. 10. Ferdinand de Soto, one of the companions of Pizarro in his conquest of Peru, planned an expedition for the conquest of Florida, and, obtaining the Spanish king's permission, embarked for that country. In two weeks he landed on the coast, and the march of the adventurers began, attended with great hardships to the invaders and cruelties to the natives. The following year

1540. they arrived at a town on the Alabama, called Mobile, which name is still retained. Here a bloody battle ensued, during which the town was burned and the Indians completely routed.

11. De Soto now marched to the north, and wintered in the upper part of what is now the state of Mississippi. In the spring of 1541 the march was resumed, and, after suffering from fire, want of food, and hostility of the natives, the Spaniards came to the great river, often called the "Father of Waters."



DISCOVERY OF THE MISSISSIPPI RIVER.

12. A plan being now formed in France for a settlement in America, Cartier again set sail for the St. Lawrence. Near the site of Quebec he built a fort, where his company passed the winter, sullen, unhappy, and dejected. 1542. In June, 1542, the expedition returned to France, and, for the next fifty years, no further discoveries were attempted by a nation which had become involved in the horrors of civil war and intestine feud.

13. The Spaniards under De Soto still marched westwardly in search of gold, but finding none, they retraced their blood-stained track to the Mississippi, where their distinguished leader died. His body was wrapped in a mantle, and at midnight sunk in the depths of the river, at once the fruit of his researches and his sepulchre.

X 1549. 14. The Spaniards made some feeble attempts to form settlements in Florida, by sending missionaries to convert the natives to Christianity. But the rude tribes they sought to convert had suffered so much from the cruelty of the Spaniards, that they regarded as enemies the priests who sought an interview with them, and the peaceful missionaries became the victims of their fury. Florida was now abandoned, for it seemed fatal to all who approached its shores. The troubles in France, and the persecutions of the Huguenots, induced Admiral Coligny to seek a refuge for men whose lives were endangered at home.

1562. 15. An expedition fitted out under the command of John Ribault, a brave man, of great maritime experience, sailed for the American shores. After exploring the coast, they came to Port Royal entrance, where Ribault determined to plant his colony. Fort Charles or Carolina gave name to the country before its occupation by the English. In consequence of civil war in France, no aid was sent to the infant colony; dissensions prevailed, and the commandant left by Ribault lost his life in a mutiny. Under the guidance of a new commander, they embarked for their native land in a rude vessel of their own construction. After suffering from the horrors of famine, they were rescued by an English vessel and taken to the coast of France.

1564. 16. In 1564, another expedition under Laudonnière was fitted out, and settled on the banks of the

river May (now St. John's). The following year Ribault arrived with supplies, and an additional number of emigrants, and there seemed to be a prospect of the continuance of the colony. But Spain had never relinquished her claim, and it was resolved to contest the right of France, and to root out her colonies. An expedition, fitted out under Don Pedro Melendez, discovered a fine haven, which was named St. Augustine. Here Melendez landed, took possession of the continent in the name of the Spanish king, and laid the foundation of the town, which is the oldest settlement in the United States.

17. By a furious assault he captured the French fort, and massacred the inmates without regard to age or sex. The French government took no measures to avenge their slaughtered colonists. But Dominic de Gourges, a man of wealth, fitted out an expedition at his own expense, embarked for Florida, captured the Spanish fort, and hanged the garrison, whom he designated "Traitors, robbers, and murderers." But being too weak to retain possession of the country, he embarked for France, and Spain still claimed Florida, and all the country bounded by the Gulf of Mexico.

18. No attempts to form settlements in America were successful for many years after the failure of Coligny. In the reign of Elizabeth of England, Sir Humphrey Gilbert formed plans for colonization. Having obtained a liberal patent from the queen, he equipped a squadron, and sailed for Newfoundland. Having entered the harbor of St. John's, he took possession in the name of his sovereign. He sailed thence on further discoveries, when his largest ship was wrecked, and it became necessary for him to return to England. On the homeward voyage his fleet encountered severe storms, and the little frigate,

with the admiral, disappeared in the darkness of the night, and all on board perished.

19. The ill success of this expedition did not discourage

1584. Sir Walter Raleigh, the step-brother of Gilbert, and

he resolved to renew the enterprise. Obtaining a patent from the queen, he sent out two vessels, under the command of Philip Amidas and Arthur Barlow. They explored the coasts of Albemarle and Pamlico Sounds, landed on Roanoke Island, and after a short stay returned to England. The queen was so much pleased with the description of the voyage, that she named the country Virginia, in token of its discovery during the reign of a virgin queen.

1585. X 20. An expedition was now fitted out, composed of seven vessels, and one hundred colonists. Ralph

Lane went out as governor of the infant colony, and Sir Richard Grenville had command of the fleet. The settlement was made on the island of Roanoke, which possessed a fine soil, and fertile climate, but disagreement with the natives, and longings for home, led to a precipitate desertion, and Lane and his surviving associates were taken to

1586. England by Sir Francis Drake, in the year following.

Two weeks afterwards, Sir Richard Grenville arrived with additions to the colony, and supplies for the settlers, and left fifteen men to retain possession.

1587. 21. Raleigh now sent out another colony, emigrants with their wives and families, and appointed

John White governor. All whom Grenville left had perished, and the fort was in ruins. The governor was urged to return to England for reinforcements and supplies. On his arrival, he found the country at war with Spain, and alarmed with a threatened invasion. The poor colonists were neglected until too late. When Governor White

returned, no trace of them could be found, and their fate has never been known.

Questions on the discoveries of the 15th and 16th centuries.—1. Who was the discoverer of America, and in what year?

2. Describe the voyage of John Cabot. Of Sebastian Cabot.

3. Who were the actual discoverers of the American continent?

4. What is said of the voyage of Cortereal? What wrong did he commit? What was his fate?

5. What country was discovered by Juan Ponce de Leon, and in what year? Why was it named Florida?

6. What prevented the Spaniards making a settlement? What is said of their leader?

7. By whom were the coasts of the New World often visited? Whom did the French government send to make discoveries? Describe the voyage of Verrazani, and name the places visited by him.

8. From what port did Cartier sail, and what island did he arrive at? What gulf did he cross, and what bay did he name? Into what inlet did he enter? How did he take possession of the country? Up what river did he sail?

9. Describe Cartier's second voyage. Where did he leave his vessels, and where did he proceed in a boat? What did he name the mountain? Where did the crews pass the winter, and in whose name did they take possession of the country?

10. What plan was formed by Ferdinand de Soto? What attended the course of the adventurers? At what town did they arrive in 1540? What took place?

11. What did de Soto now do? What discovery did de Soto's company make in 1541? What is the river they discovered frequently called?

12. What did Cartier do in his third voyage? Where did his company pass the winter? When did the expedition return to France? Why did the French discontinue their expeditions to America?

13. What did the Spaniards under de Soto search for? Why did they retrace their steps? When did their leader die, and what was done with his body?

14.—Who were sent by the Spaniards to form settlements in Florida? How were they treated by the natives? Why were they so treated? What led to French settlements in America? Who projected these settlements?

15. Who commanded the expedition, and at what place did they arrive? What gave name to the country? What took place in the infant colony? By whom were the survivors rescued?

16. Who commanded the expedition fitted out in 1564? Where was the settlement made? What accession was made to the settlement the year following? Who claimed the country? Describe the expedition of Melendez. What town was founded by him?

17. How did Melendez treat the settlers? Did the French government avenge their death? Who fitted out an expedition against the Spaniards? What did he do to the garrison? What did Spain claim?

18. From whom did Sir Humphrey Gilbert obtain a patent? Where did he land? What took place on his homeward voyage?

19. What did Sir Walter Raleigh do? Who commanded the expedition? Where did they land? What name was given to the country by the queen, and why?

20. What attempt was made to establish a colony? Why was the settlement deserted? By whom were the survivors taken to England? Who arrived with supplies, and how many men did he leave to retain possession?

21. Who constituted the colony sent out in 1587? Who was appointed governor? What was the condition of the fort and settlers left by Grenville? Why did Governor White return to England? Why were not supplies sent? When White returned did he find the colonists? What became of them?

THE SETTLEMENTS OF THE SEVENTEENTH CENTURY.

SETTLEMENT OF VIRGINIA.

1. From the discovery of the American continent in 1497 by the Cabots, no permanent settlement was established.

1602. In the beginning of the seventeenth century, Bartholomew Gosnold sailed in a small bark from England, almost in a direct course across the Atlantic. He came to a promontory, which he named Cape Cod. "Here he and four of his men landed; and this was the first spot in New England ever trod by Englishmen."* Leaving this cape, they sailed along the coast, and entered Buzzard's Bay. Here on a small island they built a storehouse and fort, and laid the foundation of a colony, which was soon after abandoned.†

1606. 2. The time had now arrived when it was determined to establish colonies which should be permanent. Men of travel and observation urged King James to make the necessary grants, to confer certain privileges, and give encouragement to emigration. Two companies were formed; the first composed of men of wealth in London, and the other of a similar character in the west of England. The London company had the right to occupy the regions from thirty-four to thirty-eight degrees of north latitude, and the western or Plymouth company from forty-one to forty-five degrees.

3. On the 19th of December, a little squadron of three

* Bancroft's History of the United States, Vol. I., p. 112.

† A French settlement was made in 1605 in Nova Scotia, and called Port Royal, now Annapolis, and in 1608 the foundation of Quebec was laid, and occupied as a French colony, the country from Delaware Bay to the Gulf of St. Lawrence being claimed by the French and named Acadia.

vessels, carrying one hundred and five men, commanded by Captain Newport, set sail for Virginia. After a long voyage, the fleet came to an anchor in Chesapeake Bay.

1607. The headlands were named Cape Charles and Cape Henry, from the king's sons, and a large river which they entered was named in honor of the king himself. The site fixed on for a settlement was named Jamestown.

4. The first settlers of Virginia suffered great hardships. They were generally idle and improvident, enfeebled by divisions, and surrounded by hostile savages. Fifty perished before autumn. Their efficient leader, Captain John Smith, had been captured by the Indians, and was now a prisoner. His life was saved by the intercession of Pocahontas, daughter of the Indian king, and he was soon after liberated. On his return to Jamestown, he found the

1608. colony reduced to forty men, some of whom were planning their escape from the settlement.

5. During the two succeeding years, a number of new settlers were added to the colony, and Jamestown assumed the appearance of a town of civilized inhabitants. Smith asserted his authority, maintained order, and promoted industry, until an accidental explosion of gunpowder disabled him, and he was compelled, in consequence of his

injuries, to return to England. The most unhappy consequences followed. Hostility on the part of the Indians, and famine, reduced the settlers to great distress, and they were on the point of deserting the colony, when Lord Delaware came with emigrants and supplies, and prevented their departure.

1610. 6. The government of the colony was administered on the basis of martial law until 1619, when a legislative assembly was convened at Jamestown. The following year slavery was introduced into the colony, by

the purchase of twenty Africans brought by a Dutch vessel.

1620. 7. But the colonists had no domestic ties to bind them to the soil. They were men who regarded Virginia but a temporary abode, and looked forward to the time when they should return to England. Few women had ventured to cross the Atlantic. But now the company sent over ninety females, young and of good character, who were married to the planters, all the costs of their passage across the ocean being defrayed by their husbands.



PLANTERS OBTAINING WIVES.

8. Powhatan had been friendly with the colonists from his daughter's marriage. But after his death, in 1618, the Indians became jealous of their increase, and preconcerted measures to destroy them. They prepared for the attack with great treachery, pretending up to the last hour the utmost friendship for those whose deaths they were plotting. At length, at mid-day, they fell on their unsuspecting victims.

9. The English would have been all destroyed
1622. had not a friendly Indian revealed the existence of the conspiracy, so that Jamestown and the neighboring settlements were guarded against an attack. The settlements on the outskirts of the colony were entirely destroyed, and the colony received a check from which it took years to recover.

10. The London company had given offence to King James, which led to its dissolution, and Virginia became a royal province. From this time governors were appointed by the king. Some of these royal governors ruled without regard to popular right. One of them, Sir John Harvey,
1636. was deposed by the council, and sent to England.

The king refused to listen to the charges against him, and he was reinstated.

11. In 1644, another Indian war broke out, and
1644. the frontier settlements were laid waste. This outbreak was followed by a war, which terminated by the Indians ceding their lands to the colonists. During Cromwell's administration, Virginia enjoyed the utmost freedom. The people elected their own governors, and had an amount of liberty which was not interfered with during the existence of the Commonwealth.

12. On the restoration of the monarchy, the rights of the people and the freedom of commerce were disregarded. Oppressive laws were enacted, and the struggle commenced between the upholders of arbitrary power, ending only with the Revolution, which placed all power in the hands of the people.

Questions on the Settlements of the 17th century.—1. What did Gosnold discover and name? What is said of his landing? Give an account of his further proceedings.

2. What companies were formed? What right was conferred on the London company? On the Western company?

3. Who commanded the squadron sent out, and how many colonists were there? Where did they anchor? What were the capes named, and why? What river did they name? What did they name their settlement?

4. What was the character of the settlers? How many died in four months? Where was Captain Smith? By whose intercession was his life spared?

5. What took place during the next two years? What did Smith maintain, and promote? Why did he return to England? What consequences ensued on Smith's departure? Who arrived with supplies?

6. How was the government administered? When and where was a legislative assembly convened? How was slavery introduced, and when?

7. How did the colonists of Virginia obtain wives?

8. How long did the Indians remain on friendly terms with the settlers? In what manner did they prepare for an attack? Were the English taken by surprise?

9. What prevented the total destruction of the English? What colonies were saved? Which destroyed?

10. What led to the dissolution of the London company? What did Virginia become? How were governors appointed? How did they govern? What is said of Sir John Harvey?

11. What war broke out in 1644, and how did it terminate? What did the people enjoy and possess during the existence of the Commonwealth? How were the governors chosen?

12. What took place on the restoration of the monarchy?

SETTLEMENT OF MASSACHUSETTS.

1606. 1. The Plymouth company, to whom North Virginia had been allotted, were unsuccessful in their first efforts, and a ship sent out by them was captured by

1607. the Spaniards. The next year two ships sailed for America, bearing emigrants to a plantation under the presidency of George Popham. They landed near the mouth of the Kennebec, and commenced their settlement. A dreary winter and several disasters discouraged the colonists, and the following year they returned to England.

1614. 2. In 1614, Captain John Smith examined the coast from Penobscot to Cape Cod, and named the country New England. He next endeavored to establish a colony, but was unsuccessful. His vessel was taken by French pirates, from whom he escaped in an open boat, and arrived safely in England.

For several years no attempt was made by the Plymouth company to form settlements, and the first permanent colony in New England was made by the Puritans, a class of men who, despairing of religious liberty in England, had emigrated to Holland, where they lived several years in exile. The wilds of America offered them an asylum, and, having returned to England to make arrangements for their voyage, the first colonists departed in a vessel called the Mayflower.

The first settlement was made on the 21st of December, 1620, and was named Plymouth. The colonists suffered from cold, sickness, and want of food, but they were not molested by the Indians. Massasoit, the chieftain of the nearest tribe, made a treaty with them, which was kept unbroken for more than half a century.

1628. 3. In 1628 a settlement was made at Salem by a number of emigrants led by John Endicott.

The towns of Boston and Charlestown were founded soon after their arrival, and the colony was incorporated under the title of the "Governor and Company of Massachusetts Bay in New England." The early settlers endured many hardships, but they bore their numerous afflictions cheerfully, rejoicing in their freedom, and their enjoyment of religious liberty.

1635. 4. Although the Puritans claimed freedom for themselves in matters of religion, they were unwilling to extend it to others whose faith differed from their own. Roger Williams, a young and zealous minister, differed from his brethren on this point. He held the doctrine that the civil magistrate should restrain crime, but never control opinion; should punish guilt, but never violate the freedom of the soul. This doctrine was opposed, and Williams was banished from the colony. Much trouble

1636. was caused by the opposition to the opinions of the clergy made by Mrs. Ann Hutchinson. She was upheld by Governor Vane and Rev. John Wheelwright, and with the latter was compelled to leave the colony.

1643. 5. In 1643 the famous union of the New England colonies was established. This confederation was entered into for mutual protection and security, and comprised the colonies of Massachusetts, Connecticut, Plymouth, and New Haven.

1675. In 1675, a war broke out with the Indians, and raged with great fury. Philip, the sachem of the Wampanoags, was a powerful and vindictive enemy, and for a full year the colony was kept in a state of terror and excitement. Troops from Plymouth and Massachusetts marched against the Indians, and Philip was driven from Mount Hope, and became a fugitive among the interior tribes of Massachusetts.

1676. 6. The Narragansetts having aided Philip, the English made war upon them, and troops were sent into their country, who destroyed their strongholds and burnt their wigwams. Finally the Indians were subdued, and Philip's wife and son were made prisoners. Heart-broken, and ready to die, he was shot by a faithless Indian, and his captive son sold as a slave. Thus ended King Philip's War, which proved fatal to the Narragansetts, and to the powerful tribe of which he was the chieftain.

1677. 7. The Acts of Navigation were considered an invasion of the rights of the colonies, and were resisted by the people of Massachusetts. This produced embittered feelings on both sides, and resulted in the

1684. forfeiture of the charter, which had been long cherished with jealous watchfulness. The following year, James II. became king, and Sir Edmund

1685. Andross was appointed governor of all New England. He was authorized to appoint members of

1686. his council, and, with their consent, make laws and lay taxes. These laws were of the most oppressive character, and the colonists were in a condition little inferior to absolute slavery.

1688. 8. But the revolution, which drove King James from his throne, restored liberty to the colonies, and Andross was seized and imprisoned. A new charter was granted by King William, greatly enlarging the territory of Massachusetts. By the old charter, the freemen of the colony elected their governor annually; by the new charter, he was appointed by the king: so that he was no longer the representative of the people, but a royal agent.

1692. 9. During King William's War, the colonists suffered greatly from the incursions of the Indians, who were instigated in their hostilities by the Canadians.

Several expeditions had been planned by the colonists, which were generally unsuccessful. The only thing worthy of note was the capture of Port Royal and the subjugation of Acadia. But the peace of Ryswick caused for 1697. a time a suspension of hostilities, destined, however, soon to be renewed, in consequence of the conflicting claims of France and England, to which we shall again revert in the progress of this history.

Questions on the Settlement of Massachusetts.—1. What is said of the first attempt of the Plymouth company to form a settlement? Give an account of the settlement on the Kennebec.

2. What service was performed by Captain Smith in 1614? What did he name the country? Did Captain Smith or the Plymouth company establish colonies? By whom was the first permanent settlement made? When and where was it established? What is said of the Indians? Of Massasoit?

3. When and by whom was a settlement made at Salem? What towns were founded soon after? What was the title of the colony?

4. What doctrine was held by Roger Williams? Why was Roger Williams banished? Who opposed the opinions of the clergy? By whom was she upheld? What were Mr. Wheelwright and she compelled to do?

5. What colonies united in a league in 1643? What is said of Philip? What troops marched against the Indians?

6. On what tribe did the English make war? What became of Philip? To whom did this war prove fatal?

7. How were the Acts of Navigation considered by the people? In what did their opposition result? Who became king in 1685? Who was appointed governor? What was he authorized to do? What was the character of his laws?

8. What became of Andross in the revolution which drove King James from his throne? Who granted a new charter? Who appointed the governor by the new charter? How was he appointed under the old charter?

9. By whom were the Indians instigated to make war on the colonists? What place was captured and what country subjugated?

SETTLEMENT OF NEW YORK.

1. While the London and the Plymouth companies were laying the foundations of empire in the Western World, the Dutch were not idle. A powerful corporation, the Dutch East India Company, employed Henry Hudson, an enterprising navigator, to make discoveries. In 1609, he sailed up the river which now bears his name, in consequence of which the Dutch claimed the territory.

2. The year succeeding this discovery, several merchants of Amsterdam fitted out a ship with merchandise, to traffic with the natives. In 1613, there were three or four rude hovels on the island of Manhattan, and this was the commencement of that great city which now counts its inhabitants by hundreds of thousands. The following year a rude fort was erected on the southern point of the island. In 1615 a settlement was commenced on an island just below the present city of Albany.

3. The country from the Delaware, or South* River, to Cape Cod, was called New Netherlands, and the settlement of Manhattan now began to rise into some degree of importance. But the colony did not enjoy uninterrupted prosperity. Their limits were narrowed on the east by the English, and by the Swedes on the south, and they were on the brink of ruin from a desolating war carried on for more than two years by the Algonquins. At last a solemn treaty was agreed upon, to the great joy of the settlers. Manhattan now began its career of prosperity, and afforded to the persecuted of every sect a city of refuge.

* So called by the Dutch settlers.

4. But the English became too powerful to be resisted. The Dutch were compelled to relinquish their claims to the territory of Connecticut, and half of Long Island. A few years later, an English squadron, under the direction of Colonel Richard Nicholls, approached the town, and demanded an acknowledgment of English sovereignty, promising the inhabitants security in life, liberty, and property. Resistance was useless, and New Netherlands became an English province. Manhattan was now known as New York, and Fort Orange was called Albany.

5. In the next war between England and Holland, a small Dutch squadron approached New York, and the city at once surrendered, without opposition. After a military occupation of fifteen months, the territory was transferred to England, and the Duke of York resumed possession. Sir Edmund Andross now assumed the government, and ruled with despotic sway. He discouraged popular assemblies, and levied taxes without consent of the people. The duke, in consequence of the representations made to him by William Penn, sent instructions to the governor to convoke a legislature. This assembly met in 1683, and established the "Charter of Liberties."

6. King James II., on his accession to the throne, refused to continue the concessions he had previously granted while Duke of York. Andross continued his oppressive rule in New York until the revolution in England, which drove James from his throne, divested this petty tyrant of his delegated power, and sent him, a prisoner, to England.

7. The peace of the colony was endangered by the hostile incursions of the French and their Indian allies, during

1689. King William's War, which commenced in 1689, and continued until the peace of Ryswick, in

1697. From this time to the Revolution, New

York was a provincial government, under governors appointed by the English government. Among those most worthy of note, we find the Earl of Bellamont, an Irish peer, who had a kind heart, and sympathized with the efforts for popular freedom. His administration was the era of harmony and kind feeling.

8. He was succeeded by the infamous Lord Cornbury, who endeavored to rule without regard to popular right or religious toleration. But all his attempts, as well as those of his successors who disregarded the just principles of government, were promptly met by the legislative assembly, who were ever watchful in resisting the encroachments of tyranny.

Questions on the Settlement of New York.—1. By whom was Henry Hudson employed to make discoveries? What river did he discover and name? Why did the Dutch claim the territory on the Hudson River?

2. What was the extent of the settlement on Manhattan Island in 1613? What great city occupies the same island? What settlement was made in 1615?

3. What was the extent of the New Netherlands? Who encroached on their territory? With whom were they at war? What is said of Manhattan?

4. What were the Dutch compelled to relinquish? When did New Netherlands become an English province? What was Manhattan now called? Fort Orange?

5. Did New York again fall into the hands of the Dutch? What nations were at war? How long was it retained? To whom was the territory then transferred? Who took possession, and who was governor? How did he rule? When was a legislature convoked? What did they establish?

6. What did King James refuse to do on his accession to the throne? What became of Andross after King James was driven from the throne?

7. How long did King William's War continue? Who invaded the colony during that war? What is said of Lord Bellamont's administration?

8. By whom was he succeeded? How did Lord Cornbury endeavor to rule? Against what were the legislative assembly watchful?

SETTLEMENT OF NEW HAMPSHIRE.

1. The country now constituting the state of New Hampshire was granted to Sir Ferdinand Gorges and John Mason, members of the Plymouth company, and in 1623 a company of English merchants established permanent settlements on the Piscataqua River. Dover and Portsmouth are the oldest towns in the state. These, for several years, were unimportant fishing stations.

2. The Rev. Mr. Wheelwright, who had been banished from Massachusetts for favoring the religious opinions of Ann Hutchinson, went to the head waters of the Piscataqua, and founded the town of Exeter, a little republic in the "vast wilderness," organized with a recognition of the principles of natural justice and religious toleration.

3. In 1641 New Hampshire was annexed to Massachusetts. But the people not being Puritans, a different code of laws was adopted for their government, and the freemen of New Hampshire were not required to be church members. In 1679, New Hampshire was separated from Massachusetts, and became a royal province. The next year a general assembly was

convened at Portsmouth, and asserted its rights by a solemn decree, which was totally disregarded by the

English government. Edward Cranfield, an avaricious and tyrannical man, was appointed governor.

His whole administration is distinguished by efforts to extort money from the people which their representatives refused to grant, and the sturdy yeomanry resisted all attempts to collect the illegal taxes which the governor had levied.

4. In 1690, the inhabitants, in convention, resolved to unite with Massachusetts, but the English government refused to grant any charter to New Hampshire. Samuel Allen, of London, purchased Mason's claims to the soil, and received the royal commission to act as governor.

5. From this time; for a quarter of a century, the civil history of the colony is nothing but a series of lawsuits

about land. Complaints were made against the governors, till New Hampshire and Massachusetts were both placed under the government of Bellamont, of New York. Finally, the yeomanry of the province gained quiet possession of the lands which their labor had redeemed from the wilderness.

6. The colony suffered greatly from Indian depredations. During King William's War, Dover was sacked and burned, and many of the inhabitants were killed or carried as captives to Canada.

Questions on the Settlement of New Hampshire.—1. To whom was New Hampshire granted? What settlements were first established? In what year? Which are the oldest towns in the state?

2. Why had Rev. Mr. Wheelwright been banished from Massachusetts? What town did he found? What principles did he recognise?

8. When was New Hampshire annexed to Massachusetts? Why was a different code of laws adopted for their government? When was New Hampshire separated from Massachusetts, and what did it become? What did the assembly which met at Portsmouth assert? Who was appointed governor? What did he make efforts to do, and how was he met?

4. What did the inhabitants resolve to do in 1690? What was refused by the English government?

5. Under what governor was New Hampshire placed in 1699?

6. From what did the colony suffer? What town was burned?

SETTLEMENT OF NEW JERSEY.

1. The Dutch, who occupied New York, claimed also the territory between the Hudson, or North River, to the Delaware, or South River, including the present state of New Jersey. These dominions were called by them New

1623. Netherlands. The southern cape of New Jersey was visited by Cornelius May, who named this point of land, and, ascending the river, built Fort Nassau, on Big Timber Creek, six miles south of Camden.

2. The settlement of the eastern part of this state is involved in some obscurity. There seems to have been a trading station at Bergen as early as 1618, established by the Dutch. In 1651, Augustine Herman purchased the land from Newark Bay to the west of

1651. Elizabethtown, and in 1658 other purchasers obtained the large grant called Bergen, and the early station became a permanent settlement.

1664. 3. The Duke of York had, a short time previously to the conquest of the New Netherlands, assigned to Lord Berkley and Sir George Carteret the land between the Hudson and Delaware. In honor of Carteret, who had

been governor of the island of Jersey, the province was called New Jersey, and the capital, being a cluster of four houses, was named Elizabethtown, in honor of Lady Carteret. Philip Carteret, brother of the proprietor, was appointed governor.

4. The province increased in numbers, and nothing disturbed its prosperity till 1670, when payment of quit-rents on the settlers' lands was demanded. This they resisted, asserting that, as they had bought their lands of the Indians, no payment of rent was justly due. While these difficulties were pending, the disaffected colonists sent deputies to an assembly which was held at Elizabethtown. That body displaced the governor, and appointed a young and frivolous man, his nephew, James Carteret, to succeed him. Philip Carteret hastened to England, and the colonists remained in undisturbed possession of their farms.*

5. In 1674, Berkley and Carteret were reinstated in possession of their province, but Lord Berkley, dissatisfied with his share, sold it for a thousand pounds to John Fenwick, in trust for Edward Byllinge. The next year, Fenwick, with a large company, set sail for the newly-purchased lands. Ascending the Delaware River, he landed on a pleasant, fertile spot, which he named Salem. But Byllinge was in embarrassed circumstances, and could not retain his share of the province. It was accordingly sold to the Friends, or Quakers, who wished to establish a government where all men should be free from oppression.

6. This portion was called West New Jersey, and the part retained by Carteret, East New

* Bancroft's History of the United States, Vol. II., p. 319.

1682. Jersey. In 1682, William Penn, with eleven other Friends, purchased East New Jersey of the trustees of Carteret, and appointed Robert Barclay governor.

1683. In consequence of persecution in Scotland, large numbers of Presbyterians emigrated to East Jersey.

1688. 7. In 1688, the proprietaries both of East and West Jersey surrendered their claims to government, and the province was ruled for a short time by the tyrannical Andross. At the Revolution, the sovereignty merged in the crown, and for three years East New Jersey had no government whatever, while in West New Jersey the authority of the deputy governor was rejected by the people. Finally, the proprietors resigned all their claims, and the two Jerseys became united, and thenceforth became a royal province, the first governor being Edward Hyde, Lord Cornbury. But finally, New

1702. Jersey obtained a governor appointed by the king, and whose administration was entirely distinct from the adjoining province of New York. Lewis Morris was the first governor so appointed.

1738.

Questions on the Settlement of New Jersey.—1. Who claimed New Jersey? By whom was the southern cape of New Jersey visited? Where did he build Fort Nassau? In what year?

2. In what year was there a trading station at Bergen? By whom was Bergen settled, and in what year?

3. To whom did the Duke of York convey the territory between the Hudson and Delaware? Why was it called New Jersey? What was the capital, and whence did it derive its name? Who was governor?

4. Why did the people refuse quit-rents on their lands?

5. To whom did Lord Berkley sell his share? Where did Fenwick with a colony settle, and in what year? To whom did Byllinge sell his share of the province?

6. What was this portion of the province called? What was

Carteret's share called? Who purchased East New Jersey? Who was made governor?

7. What did the proprietors do in 1688? When were the two Jerseys united, and who was the first governor? In what year did New Jersey obtain a governor solely for that province? Who was the first governor so appointed?



SETTLEMENT OF MARYLAND.

1609. 1. The limits of Virginia, by its second charter, included all the soil which afterwards became the state of Maryland. The head of the Chesapeake was explored, and the settlements in Accomac were extended. and commerce was begun with the Indian tribes. A

1631. trading settlement seems to have been established on the river Patuxent, whose object was to carry on the fur trade with the Indians.

2. An attempt was made to obtain a monopoly of this
1632. commerce, by William Clayborne, a surveyor in the employ of the London company. Establishments were formed on Kent Island, and also near the mouth of the Susquehanna. The same year, Sir George Calvert, Lord Baltimore, obtained a charter for the province, which was named Maryland, in honor of the queen, Henrietta Maria. Before the patent passed the great seal, Sir George Calvert died, and his son Cecil succeeded to his honors and his fortunes.

3. Leonard Calvert, brother of the proprietor, with about
1634. two hundred emigrants, sailed up the St. Mary's, some distance above its junction with the Potomac, where he purchased an Indian village of the natives, who removed and gave the settlers full possession. In the

humble village of St. Mary's religious liberty found a peaceful home.

4. The settlers of Maryland escaped the want, the privation, and the hardship endured by many of the colonies, and its advance was proportionally rapid. In six months it had made more progress than Virginia had in six years. Under the mild institutions of Lord Baltimore, the desert wilderness bloomed with new settlements, and the Catholics, who had been oppressed by the laws of England, here found a peaceful asylum, and all religious sects were sheltered from persecution.

5. Nothing impaired the happiness of the colony but the conduct of William Clayborne. He refused to submit to Lord Baltimore, and resolved to maintain his possessions by force of arms. In a skirmish which ensued, Clayborne's men were defeated. The colonial assembly passed an act of attainder against Clayborne, and his estates were seized and forfeited.

6. The Indians, alarmed at the rapid increase of the settlers, now commenced hostilities, and carried on a frontier war, which continued till 1644, when peace was established, and made durable by prudent legislation and firm humanity. But peace was of short continuance in the colony, for the restless Clayborne excited a rebellion. The insurgents were at first successful, and compelled the governor to fly, and for a year held a dominion distinguished for disorder and misrule.

7. In 1652, during the Commonwealth, the government was taken from Lord Baltimore, and placed in other hands, and for several years there was a constant struggle for the supremacy. Finally, a compromise was effected between the contending parties, and government was surrendered to the agent of the

1660. proprietary. At the restoration of monarchy, the authority of Philip Calvert was fully recognised.

8. The claims of the proprietor were acknowledged from this time until his death, which took place in 1676.

1676. Cecilius Calvert, Lord Baltimore, the founder and the father of Maryland, devoted more than forty years of his life to promote the happiness of the colonists, to protect the rights of conscience, and to establish, on the broadest platform, the principles of religious liberty. His struggles and success in establishing these principles, enrol his name among the great and wise benefactors of the human race, in all ages and in every clime.

9. On the death of Cecilius, his son Charles succeeded to his title and estate. He had been governor of the colony for fourteen years, and had ruled with wisdom and moderation. He was now obliged to return to England, and during his absence discontents arose, and his deputies were deposed from office.

10. King William now constituted Maryland a royal province, and the church of England was by law established as the state religion, to be supported by general taxation. St. Mary's ceased to be the capital, and Annapolis hereafter became the seat of government. The government continued to be a royal province till 1715, when it was restored to the proprietor, in whose family it remained till the Revolution.

Questions on the Settlement of Maryland.—1. Where was the first settlement in Maryland? In what year? What was its object?

2. Where did William Clayborne form settlements? In what year did Lord Baltimore obtain a charter for the province? Why was it named Maryland?

8. When and where did Lord Baltimore establish his colony? Who conducted the emigrants to their new home? What did

Leonard Calvert purchase from the Indians? What name was given to the settlement?

4. How does the settlement of Maryland compare with the settlement of Virginia? What is said of religious toleration?

5. What disturbed the happiness of the colony? What did Clayborne resolve to do? What occurred in a skirmish?

6. What did the Indians do in 1642? How long did the war continue? Who excited a rebellion in 1645?

7. From whom was the government taken in 1652? For what was there a constant struggle? How was the question settled? Whose authority was acknowledged at the Restoration?

8. When did Lord Baltimore die? What is said of his character?

9. Who succeeded Lord Baltimore? How long had he been governor, and what is said of his rule?

10. What was Maryland constituted during the reign of King William? What was established as the state religion? What became the capital? When was the government restored to the proprietor, and how long did it remain in his family?

SETTLEMENT OF DELAWARE.

1. The first settlement in Delaware was made by the Dutch. A company was formed to make a settlement, and
1629. one of their number purchased the land extending from Cape Henlopen for more than thirty miles, and comprising the soil of the two lower counties.

2. This tract of land was soon after colonized. De Vries,
1631. the conductor of the expedition, planted a colony of more than thirty persons, near the present town of Lewes. After a year's residence, De Vries returned to Holland. After his departure, the settlers became embroiled with the Indians, who prepared an ambush, and murdered every one of the emigrants.

3. Several years elapsed before any further attempts were made to form settlements. The Swedes now determined to establish a colony, and, availing themselves of the experience of Peter Minuits, who had been governor at Manhattan,

1638. they fitted out an expedition, which arrived in the Delaware Bay. They purchased the land extending from Paradise Point, or Cape Henlopen, to the falls in the river Delaware, near Trenton. Their first settlement was near the mouth of Christiana Creek, at Fort Christiana, so named from the queen of Sweden.

4. A large number of Swedes and Finns emigrated to the new settlement. Their plantations were extended, and the governor established his residence on the island of Tinicum, a few miles below Philadelphia. Here a fort was built, and houses soon began to cluster around it.

5. But the Dutch, who had long looked with jealous eyes on the Swedish settlements, sent a party who built Fort Casimir, on the site of New Castle. The Swedes considered this an encroachment on their rights, and Rising, the Swedish governor, availing himself of stratagem, obtained possession of the fort. The Dutch governor soon after sailed with a force of six hundred men into the Delaware, for the purpose of conquest. Resistance was useless, and the Swedes were compelled to surrender their only colony, after seventeen years' possession.

1656. 6. From this time until the Dutch were subdued by the English, Delaware was governed by deputies appointed by Stuyvesant. After the conquest of the Dutch,

1664. Delaware became a dependency of New York. It was afterwards conveyed by the Duke of York to

1682. William Penn, who landed at New Castle on the 27th day of October, 1682.

7. In the course of a few years the "territories" of Delaware wished for a government independent of Pennsylvania. Their request was acceded to by William Penn, and the lower counties became a separate colony, under Colonel Markham. But Fletcher, who assumed the control, once more united Delaware to Pennsylvania. When the government was restored to Penn, Delaware still continued to send delegates to the Assembly. But in 1702, Pennsylvania convened its separate legislature, and the two colonies were never again united.

Questions on the Settlement of Delaware.—1. By whom was the first settlement made in Delaware? What was the extent of the purchase made in 1629?

2. Where was the first settlement made, and by whom? What took place when De Vries returned to Holland?

3. When did the Swedes make a settlement? What was the extent of their purchase? Where was their first settlement?

4. Where did the governor establish his residence? What was built on this island?

5. What was built by the Dutch at New Castle? How did the Swedes view the building of the fort? How did the Swedish governor gain possession? What did the Dutch governor do? What was the result?

6. After the conquest of the Dutch what did Delaware become? To whom was it conveyed by the Duke of York? When did William Penn land at New Castle?

7. What did the "territories" of Delaware wish for? Who acceded to their request, and who became governor? When was Delaware reunited to Pennsylvania? When were the colonies finally separated?

SETTLEMENT OF CONNECTICUT.

1. The Dutch were the first to discover and occupy the banks of the Connecticut. The soil around Hartford was
1633. purchased from the natives, and a fort erected on land within the present limits of that city. The territory had been previously granted to the Earl of Warwick; it was afterwards held by Lord Say and Seal, Lord Brooke and others, as his assigns.

2. A few months after the erection of the Dutch fort, the people of New Plymouth built a trading-house at Windsor, and carried on a fur trade with the Indians.

1635. Soon after, Mr. Winthrop returned from England, with a commission to build a fort at the mouth of the Connecticut. Previously to his arrival, settlements had been commenced by emigrants from the environs of Boston, at Windsor and Weathersfield.

3. In the summer following, Rev. Thomas Hooker, and
1636. a large company, left Massachusetts, and, after a toilsome journey through the forest, laid the foundation of Hartford, on the "delightful banks" of the
1637. Connecticut. At the time of this settlement, the Pequod Indians were numerous and hostile, and the colonies were compelled to make war against them. This war terminated in the complete overthrow of the Pequods, and the destruction of the tribe.

4. The following year, Rev. John Davenport
1638. and Theophilus Eaton founded a colony at New Haven. After a day of fasting and prayer, they rested their frame of government on a covenant that "all of them would be ordered by the rules which the Scriptures held

forth to them." In 1639, the free planters of the colony met in a barn, and agreed upon a code of laws, and appointed seven persons, in whom the government of the colony was invested.

5. The increasing numbers of the English completely surrounded the Dutch fort, and overwhelmed the feeble settlement which they had planted. Governor 1650. Stuyvesant therefore went to Hartford, and concluded a treaty, by which New Netherlands extended to the state line, and the eastern part of Long Island was ceded to Connecticut.

6. The colony on the Connecticut promptly acknowledged the claim of Charles II., on his restoration to the throne of his fathers, and sent John Winthrop the 1662. younger to obtain a charter from the king. A charter was readily granted, and, connecting New Haven with Hartford in the colony, it was extended from Narragansett River to the Pacific Ocean!

7. The union of the two colonies was not, however, immediately effected. New Haven was unwilling 1664. to become merged in the larger colony of Hartford, but the wise counsels of Winthrop finally prevailed, and the two colonies became united, and continued for many years prosperous, and in full enjoyment of their political and religious liberties.

8. When New Netherlands was surrendered to the English, and the Duke of York obtained its possession, Andross proceeded with armed sloops to Connecticut, and 1675. endeavored to obtain possession of the fort at Saybrook. But he was overawed by the firmness of the colonial troops, and obliged to desist. On the accession of James II. to the crown, Andross was sent to govern the colony, and demand the surrender of the charter. Earnest pleadings

were made against the demand, and the discussion was prolonged till nightfall. The charter lay on the table. On a sudden, the lights were extinguished, and Joseph Wadsworth, availing himself of the darkness, seized the charter, and concealed it in the hollow of an oak, which was older than the colony, and long survived it, under the venerated name of the Charter Oak.

9. Andross now ruled with absolute power till the Revolution, which drove his master from the throne, and threw him into a prison. The discolored

1690. charter was then taken from its hiding-place, an assembly convened, and Connecticut resumed her freedom. But the

1692. English crown having claimed the command of the militia, conferred the office on the governor of New York, and directed him to assume the duties of that office.

10. In pursuance of his instructions, Fletcher went to Hartford, and ordered the militia to assemble on the parade ground. He then appeared at the head of the line, and ordered Bayard, of New York, to read his commission. Captain Wadsworth, who claimed the command, ordered the drums to beat some of the old marches well known to veterans. Fletcher commanded silence, and said: "I will not set my foot out of this colony, till I have seen his majesty's commission obeyed." But Wadsworth was resolute, and, as the excited people came swarming into Hartford, Fletcher retired, and went back to his government in New York, and the English government soon after renounced its claim.

Questions on the Settlement of Connecticut.—1. Who first occupied the banks of the Connecticut? What purchase was made from the natives, and what was erected? To whom had the territory previously been granted? By whom was it afterwards held?

2. Where did the people of New Plymouth build a trading-house? Where were settlements soon after made?

3. Describe the settlement made by Rev. Mr. Hooker. What tribe of Indians were hostile? How did the war terminate?

4. Who founded the colony of New Haven? On what did they rest their frame of government?

5. What treaty was made at Hartford by Governor Stuyvesant?

6. What was granted by the charter of Charles II.?

7. By whose counsels were the colonies united?

8. What did Andross endeavor to obtain? Why did he desist? On the accession of James II. who was sent to govern the colony, and what did he demand? Was the charter surrendered? What became of it? What was the tree called?

9. How long did Andross rule? What was done after Andross was imprisoned?

10. What did Governor Fletcher do? What was ordered by Captain Wadsworth? What was the result?



SETTLEMENT OF RHODE ISLAND.

1. When Roger Williams was proscribed in Massachusetts, he left his home in Salem, and was, through the severity of an inclement winter, an inmate of the dense and pathless forests. Part of the time he was a guest with Massasoit and other friendly Indians.

2. Next June, with five companions, he embarked on Narragansett Bay, in a frail Indian canoe, and gave to his landing-place the name of Providence, to express his trust in the mercy of the Divine Being. In the course of two years, he was joined by others who fled from persecution to his asylum. The tract of land comprising Providence Plantation was conveyed to him by a deed from the chieftain of the Narragansetts.

3. The friends of Ann Hutchinson, who had been banished from Massachusetts, led by John Clarke and William Coddington, were welcomed by Roger Williams, and the chief of the Narragansetts made them a gift of a beautiful island. Here they laid the foundation of Portsmouth, and the following year they commenced the settlement of Newport.

4. The new colony* was excluded from the union of
1643. the New England colonies, and was obliged to
appeal to the mother country for protection.
Roger Williams, therefore, went to England, and obtained
1644. from the Parliament a free and absolute charter,
"with full power and authority to govern and rule
themselves."

5. When Roger Williams had obtained from the Parliament the confirmed union of the territories which
1663. now constitute the state, he left John Clarke in
England, as the agent of the colony. On the
restoration of Charles II., a charter of unexampled liberality was granted to the colony, which embraced all the principles of civil and religious liberty for which it had contended. This charter continued to be the state constitution until 1842, with the exception of a short period, when the tyranny of Andross established his own arbitrary rule.

6. The colony of Rhode Island was an asylum for the persecuted of every sect and clime. The benevolent principles of its founder were fully carried out, and, favored by its wise and beneficent charter, it grew and flourished, and though the smallest in extent of territory among the

* The colony was originally called "Rhode Island and Providence Plantation."

states of our Federal Union, it stands among the foremost for the benevolence and wisdom of its institutions.

Questions on the Settlement of Rhode Island.—1. What did Roger Williams do, when proscribed in Massachusetts?

2. What did he do in June, 1636? What did he name his landing-place? Why did he call it Providence? Who conveyed the land to him?

3. What towns were settled by the banished followers of Ann Hutchinson? Who presented them with the island which gives name to the state?

4. What did Roger Williams obtain from the Parliament?

5. What was granted by Charles II.? How long did this charter constitute the state government?

6. For what was the colony an asylum?

SETTLEMENT OF NORTH CAROLINA.

1. The first attempts to form settlements in North Carolina were made by Raleigh, on the island of Roanoke, as related in a former part of this history. After the

1587. entire destruction of the second colony, no further attempts were made to form settlements until 1653, when a

1653. company was formed for the purpose of emigrating from Virginia. This project does not seem to have

succeeded, and the first settlement appears to have been made by a party of New England men, who, in a little bark,

1661. had found their way into the Cape Fear River, purchased a tract of land from the Indian chiefs,

and planted a town on Oldtown Creek, on the south side of Cape Fear River.

2. The overflow of population in Virginia extended into

North Carolina, and a few straggling families had fixed their abodes within its limits as early as 1660. But the first regular settlement from Virginia was made on 1663. Albemarle Sound, in 1663. A separate government was established over this settlement, and William Drummond was appointed to be its governor.

3. The settlement on Cape Fear River was not entirely abandoned, but it did not prosper. Several planters of Barbadoes emigrated to Cape Fear River, near the 1665. former settlement, and laid the foundation of a town, every vestige of which has long since disappeared. The feeble remnant of the New England colonists united with the new settlers.

4. Lord Clarendon and his associates obtained from the king a new charter, which granted them an immense extent of territory, and conferred on them the most ample privileges. A constitution for the government was prepared by the distinguished writer and philosopher, John Locke, which was totally at variance with the popular wishes, and contrary to the genius of free institutions. It was tried, but never carried out, and finally abandoned as impracticable and useless. William Sayle was appointed governor 1669. by the proprietaries.

5. The colony continued to grow, and received every year fresh accessions of emigrants—men who fled from persecution, and here found an asylum. The first trouble 1678. was an attempt made to enforce the navigation laws, which were very oppressive. This attempt hastened an insurrection. The people rose and imprisoned the deputies of the proprietaries, and organized a government for themselves. Culpepper, the leader of the insurrection, was seized, carried to England, tried by an English jury, and acquitted.

6. An act of amnesty was granted, and Sothel, one of the
1663. proprietaries, now assumed the government. His
sole object was the acquisition of wealth, and, with
this view, he cheated his partners, and plundered the colo-
nists. The people bore with his infamous exactions for
1688. five years, when he was deposed, and driven from
the colony.

7. The constitution framed by Mr. Locke having been
practically inoperative, was now formally abrogated by the
1695. proprietaries. Soon after, John Archdale, a mem-
ber of the Society of Friends, became governor,
and the colony prospered under his wise and benevolent
administration.

8. A number of French, German, and Swiss families
1711. having made settlements in the vicinity of the
Roanoke River and Pamlico Sound, the Tuscaroras
considered it an encroachment on their territory, and,
attacking their settlements in the dead of night, set fire
to their cabins, and murdered the unfortunate settlers.
Relief was obtained from South Carolina. A body of
troops from that province defeated the Tuscaroras, who fled
to Lake Oneida, and joined the confederacy of Indians,
making the sixth nation in that celebrated union. From
this time the colony enjoyed peace and prosperity.

Questions on the Settlement of North Carolina.—1. Where and by
whom were the first attempts made to form settlements? In what
year was the first permanent settlement made? Where and by
whom?

2. Where was a settlement made in 1663?

3. What is said of the settlements on Cape Fear River?

4. What did Lord Clarendon obtain from the king? Who pre-
pared a constitution? What is said of it? Who was governor?

5. What brought on an insurrection? What was done by the
people?

6. What act was passed? Who assumed the government? What was his sole object? How long did the people submit, and what did they then do?

7. What was done by the proprietaries? Who became governor? What is said of his administration?

8. What Indian war broke out? What was the cause? What became of the Tuscarora Indians?

SETTLEMENT OF SOUTH CAROLINA.

1. The history of the unfortunate settlement on Port Royal Entrance has been related. Its horrors were
1562. not forgotten, and the succeeding expedition carefully avoided its shores, for the more genial ones of the river May. The next settlement was made by the English
1670. proprietaries, more than a century afterwards. In January a number of emigrants set sail for Carolina.

They were conducted by Joseph West and William Sayle, the latter of whom was appointed governor. They entered the harbor where Ribault had anchored, and the site where the Huguenots had erected the fortress of Carolina. But they did not settle here. After a brief sojourn, they sailed into Ashley River, and, on "the first high land," began their town, of which at this day not a vestige remains, except the line of a moat, intended as a defence against the Indians.

2. On landing, they established a form of government, and refused to accept or act under the grand model of Locke's Constitution, which had been prepared for this colony, as well as for its northern neighbor. The first site for a town not suiting for commerce, it was deserted, and the

neck of land known as Oyster Point became the
1680. site of a village, named in honor of the king, and
now the opulent city and the great commercial mart of
Charleston.

3. African slavery was introduced in the earliest period
of this colony, and throve, from the nature of the
1671. climate, much more rapidly than in the more
northern provinces. Large numbers of emigrants came
from different parts of Europe, and it is remarkable, that
Carolina became an asylum for the persecuted French
Protestants, agreeably to the design of Coligny one hundred
years previously.

4. Several years were spent in continued struggles
between the proprietaries and the people. The
1685. former wished, and labored, to introduce the
Constitution which had been prepared with so much care,
and the latter absolutely refused to accept any
1686. of its provisions. James Colleton was appointed
governor, but his office, his rank, and his wealth, produced
neither respect nor obedience. The Revolution of
1688. 1688 brought about an absolute repeal of his
attempts to govern, and, when William and Mary were pro-
claimed as the sovereigns, Colleton was banished
1690. from the province.

5. Seth Sothel, who had been driven from North Carolina,
now became governor, and, the following year, the
1691. Huguenots were allowed all the rights of citizens in
the colony. But tranquillity was not restored, and anarchy
and confusion prevailed. In 1693, the fundamental
1693. constitution was abrogated, and, the following year,
John Archdale was appointed governor. He conciliated
parties, established friendly relations with the neighboring
Indians and with the Spaniards of Florida, and elicited

from the freemen of the province the declaration that Archdale, "By his wisdom, patience, and labor, had laid a firm foundation for a most glorious superstructure."

6. The proprietaries, disappointed in establishing an hereditary nobility, determined to establish by law the "church of England," and, obtaining a majority in the
1695. Assembly, they excluded all dissenters from any share in legislation or government. The dissenters appealed to the House of Lords, and the intolerant acts were nullified by royal authority.

7. The wars of Europe involved the colonies in hostilities with the nations which had settled on their borders. Thus

1702. South Carolina became involved in war with Florida, and the governor headed an expedition for the reduction of St. Augustine. While besieging that place, two Spanish vessels appeared at the mouth of the harbor, when Governor Moore raised the siege, and retreated. He

1705. next marched against the Indians on the Bay of Apalachee, and defeated them and their Spanish allies, and gave to Great Britain a claim to the country now constituting Georgia.

8. The next year a French squadron attempted
1706. an invasion of Charleston, but was repelled by the bravery of its inhabitants. A war broke out with the Yamasee tribe of Indians, by an indiscriminate massacre of the inhabitants of the frontier settlements. They continued

1715. their depredations, but were finally defeated in a desperate conflict on the banks of the Salkehatchie.

9. The oppressive measures of the proprietaries, and their total disregard of the rights of the people, led to a

1719. revolution. The Assembly voted themselves a convention, elected James Moore governor, and renounced the government of the proprietaries. The latter

forfeited their charter, and it was abrogated by the
1720. lords of the regency and royal authority, and
Francis Nicholson was appointed governor. In 1729,
1729. North and South Carolina became distinct provinces, and, the following year, an alliance was entered into with the Cherokees. The covenant promised "that love should flow like the rivers, and peace endure like the mountains;" and it was faithfully kept, at least for one generation.

Questions on the Settlement of South Carolina.—1. What is said of the first settlement at Port Royal? How long was it before another was made? What took place in 1670? Did they settle at Port Royal? Where was the first settlement? Does any vestige of their town remain?

2. What place was selected for a town in 1680? In honor of whom was it named?

3. What is said of African slavery? For whom did South Carolina become an asylum?

4. What caused struggles between the proprietaries and the people? Who was appointed governor, and what is said of his authority?

5. Who now became governor? What is said of the Huguenots? When was the fundamental constitution abrogated? Repeat the declaration made respecting Governor Archdale.

6. What form of religion did the proprietaries seek to establish? What did the dissenters do?

7. What expedition was led by the governor in 1702? Describe his march against the Indians. What territory was gained by this war?

8. What did a French squadron attempt? What war took place?

9. What led to a revolution in 1715? After the abrogation of the charter, who became governor? When did North and South Carolina become distinct provinces? With what tribe of Indians was a treaty made?

SETTLEMENT OF PENNSYLVANIA.

1. The settlements of New Sweden, which commenced near Christiana Creek, in Delaware, gradually extended into Pennsylvania. In 1643, John Printz, the Swedish governor, built a handsome and commodious mansion on Tinicum Island, a short distance below the mouth of the Schuylkill. The village of Upland, now Chester, was among the earliest settlements, and the southern part of Philadelphia was a Swedish village. Here, in the vicinity of the Navy Yard, they erected a log church,* several years before the arrival of the English colony.

2. The name of Pennsylvania is derived from William Penn, a member of the Society of Quakers, or Friends. His father, Admiral Penn, is distinguished in English history, for the conquest of Jamaica, and as a brave and skilful naval commander. He bequeathed to his son William a claim on the government for sixteen thousand pounds. Penn applied for a grant of a territory on the west bank of the Delaware, and with the king, who was embarrassed for money, this was an easy way to cancel the debt.

3. Accordingly, a charter for the territory was obtained, and a royal proclamation soon announced to all the inhabitants of the province, that William Penn, their absolute proprietary, was invested with all powers necessary for its government.

* On the site of the present antiquated structure, which was built in 1700.

1681. 4. The proprietary also issued his proclamation to the settlers who were occupying a small portion of his territory, and commissioned William Markham as his agent. Soon after, the first company of settlers left England, and landed, in December, in Upland, now Chester.

1682. 5. By a grant of the Duke of York, the three lower counties (or Delaware) came under his jurisdiction. In the year following the arrival of the first emigrants, Penn himself embarked for his territory, and landed at New Castle, on the 27th of October, 1682. The day after his landing, he addressed the inhabitants, recommended sobriety and peace, and pledged himself to grant civil freedom and liberty of conscience.



PENN LANDING IN PHILADELPHIA.

6. From thence he proceeded to Chester, and, in an open boat, to the site which he intended for a city. Here the great city of Philadelphia had its humble origin, and here the famous treaty with the Indians was made, and the promise given by the sons of the forest, that they "would

live in love with William Penn and his children, as long as the sun and moon should endure."

1682. 7. The first Assembly met at Chester, on the 4th of December, and, during a session of three days, enacted three laws. The next Legislative Assembly met at

1683. Philadelphia, in the Friends' meeting-house. A charter of liberties was adopted, which was one of unexampled liberality. It lodged the largest amount of power in the people, reserving only a negative vote to the proprietary.

1684. 8. Penn now returned to England, leaving the government in the hands of five commissioners of the royal council, with Thomas Lloyd as president. Soon after his return to England, King Charles II. died, and was succeeded by his brother, the Duke of York. The new king (James II.) was friendly to Penn, and, after the

1688. Revolution which placed William and Mary on the throne, the government of Pennsylvania was taken in the hands of the king, who commissioned Colonel

1691. Fletcher to govern the province. Penn himself was several times imprisoned, for his supposed adherence to the fortunes of the banished sovereign.

9. Finally, the entire innocence of William Penn was fully established, and he was again restored to his proprietary rights. But the pressure of poverty prevented his immediate return to Pennsylvania, and Markham was invested with the executive power. Before

1699. the close of the century, William Penn was with his wife and family in Pennsylvania. The house he occupied is still standing in the city of Philadelphia.

1701. 10. Penn now prepared a new frame of government, in which he conceded all the political privileges asked for by the people. Religious liberty was

established, and the province became an asylum for the oppressed of every clime and creed. He now returned to England, leaving Andrew Hamilton as deputy governor. This great and good man never again returned to his province. He died in London, in 1718, leaving his interest in Pennsylvania to his children. It continued in the Penn family until the Revolution, when their claim was purchased by the commonwealth for the sum of \$580,000.

Questions on the Settlement of Pennsylvania.—1. When and by whom was the first European settlement made in Pennsylvania? Name other settlements made by the Swedes.

2. Who was William Penn? How did he obtain the territory?

3. What royal proclamation was made?

4. When did the first colonists leave England? Where did they land?

5. When did Penn arrive, and where did he land?

6. After leaving New Castle, where did he proceed? When was Philadelphia founded? What promise was given by the Indians?

7. Where was the first Legislative Assembly held? The second? What is said of the charter of liberties?

8. When did Penn return to England? Why was the government taken out of his hands?

9. When the government was restored, who acted as deputy governor? When did Penn revisit the province?

10. What did Penn grant to the people? When did he return to England? When and where did he die? How long did the province belong to the Penn family? What was then paid for the claim?

SETTLEMENT OF GEORGIA.

1. We come now to the settlement of the thirteenth and last of the original colonies. James Oglethorpe, a member of Parliament, and a philanthropist, desirous of procuring an asylum for multitudes who were poor and helpless in the country of their birth, associated a number of gentlemen

1732. with himself for that purpose. They obtained a charter from George II., which erected the country between the Savannah and the Alatamaha, and from the head springs of those rivers due west to the Pacific, into the province of Georgia, and placed it for twenty-one years under the guardianship of a corporation "in trust for the poor."

2. In November, General Oglethorpe himself, with about one hundred and twenty emigrants, left England, and arrived at Charleston. From thence he sailed to Port Royal. Then, ascending the Savannah River, he

1733. chose as the site of his town the high bluff on which the city of Savannah is built.

3. Oglethorpe now entered into treaties of alliance with the neighboring tribes of Indians, and, by his kindness, conciliated the sons of the forest, and gained their confidence. The trustees having invited the persecuted Protestants of

1734. Europe to settle in Georgia, great numbers came from Germany, the Highlands of Scotland, and other portions of Europe, and formed settlements in this now thriving province.

4. The same year, the town of Augusta was laid out, and Oglethorpe visited England. In 1736, he returned,

with three hundred emigrants, and the colony
1736. was constantly receiving accessions. Among other benevolent enterprises, the celebrated preacher, George Whitefield, founded an orphan asylum at Savannah.

5. The boundaries between the province and Florida not being clearly defined, Oglethorpe, with a party, built a fort, named St. George, on an island at the mouth of the St. John's River, which he claimed to be the southern limits of Georgia. The Spaniards of Florida threatened war, and claimed the whole territory as far as the sound of St. Helena. But hostilities were avoided for a time by negotiation. The English Fort St. George was abandoned, and the St. Mary's River ultimately became the southern boundary of Georgia.

6. In 1739, England declared war against Spain,
1739. and Oglethorpe again extended the boundaries of Georgia to the St. John's River, and, early the next year, invaded Florida. He attacked St. Augustine, but
1740. in consequence of the sickness of his troops, and their ill success, he was obliged to return to Georgia.

7. The Spanish government now resolved to
1742. invade Georgia. A fleet and armament from Cuba sailed towards the mouth of the St. Mary's, and shortly afterwards entered St. Simon's Harbor, successfully passing the English batteries. A party of Spaniards landed and marched against the town of Frederica, but were defeated by Oglethorpe and a company of Scottish Highlanders; a second party advanced to the rescue, but they were also defeated and compelled to retreat with a loss of two hundred men. But the Spaniards being embarrassed by divisions, deceived by an ingenious stratagem, and fearful of surprise, re-embarked and left the coast, much to the joy of the colonists.

1743. 8. After a year of peace, General Oglethorpe, having fulfilled his mission, returned to England, where he lived to extreme old age, beloved and venerated by all his contemporaries for his nobleness of nature, and his great benevolence of character. After the departure of Oglethorpe, the colony enjoyed peace and uninterrupted prosperity until the Revolution, which sundered its "political ties," and formed it into a sovereign and independent state.

Questions on the Settlement of Georgia.—1. Who was the founder of Georgia? From whom did he receive a charter? Describe the extent of territory granted to him.

2. Where did he make his settlement? In what year?

3. What is said of his alliance with the Indians? What class of emigrants now settled in Georgia?

4. What did Oglethorpe do in 1734? When did he return? What is said of the colony?

5. What fort was built by Oglethorpe? Give its location. What did the Spaniards claim? What ultimately became the boundary?

6. What war was declared in 1739? What was done by Oglethorpe? What town was attacked?

7. Describe the invasion of Georgia. Where were the Spaniards defeated? What did they do soon after?

8. In what year did Governor Oglethorpe return to England? What further is said of him? What is said of the colony after his departure?

COLONIAL HISTORY.

FROM THE COMMENCEMENT OF THE EIGHTEENTH CENTURY TO THE END OF THE FRENCH WAR IN 1763.

1. We have now traced the history of the original thirteen colonies from their discovery and first settlements, to a period in which they were firmly established as valuable appendages to the British crown, and from which they were finally alienated by the tyranny and folly of the latter.

1702. 2. In May, 1702, England, now governed by Queen Anne, declared war against both France and Spain, and our colonies were again involved in its horrors. Deerfield, in Massachusetts, was surprised 1704. in the dead of night by a party of French and Indians, and most of the inhabitants massacred or carried into captivity. For several years these savage hostilities continued, and the settlers were frequently surprised, and scalped or murdered by their cruel enemies, who respected neither sex nor age.

1710. 3. But now a fleet from England, joined by another from New England, and four colonial regiments, sailed from Boston, and, in a few days, anchored in the harbor of Port Royal, the garrison of which soon capitulated, and marched out with the honors of war. In honor of the queen, the place was named Annapolis.

1711. 4. The following year a large fleet sailed from England, under command of Admiral Walker, for the reduction of Canada. An army was also assembled at Albany, to co-operate with the fleet in its attack on Mont-

real. But the fleet never reached its destination. The obstinacy of the admiral, in rejecting the advice of the pilots, caused the wreck of several vessels, and the loss of nearly nine hundred men. This disaster put an end to the expedition. Two years afterwards, the war was
1713. terminated by the treaty of Utrecht, and Acadia, or Nova Scotia, was ceded to the English.

5. But the peace of Utrecht did not make a final settlement of the boundaries between France and England. Each power laid claim to the vast extent of territory extending west. The colony of New York established a commercial post at Oswego,* which was
1722. afterwards converted into a fortress, in defiance of the Iroquois, and the protest of France. This latter power did not look indifferently on English encroachments. In 1731 the French erected the fortress of Crown Point, on
1731. Lake Champlain. This post defended the approach to Canada by water, and gave security to Montreal.

6. A party from Canada soon afterwards arrived
1736. at that point where the Niagara empties into Lake Ontario, and here they built Fort Niagara. It was now seen that the ambitious designs of the French aimed to connect their possessions in Canada with the distant one of Louisiana, and that to effect this they were establishing a line of communication from Canada to the Gulf of Mexico.

7. In 1744, the war, commonly called King
1744. George's War, broke out between England and France, and, as a matter of course, extended to their American colonies. Before the intelligence of the declaration of war had been received in New England, a body of French from Cape Breton surprised the English garrison

* Fort on Lake Ontario, N. Y.

at Canseau, and, after destroying the fort, carried eighty men as prisoners of war to Louisbourg.

8. Shirley, the governor of Massachusetts, resolved on an enterprise for the capture of Louisbourg. An
1745. army from Massachusetts and Connecticut, under command of William Pepperell, met at Canseau, and soon after landed on the island of Cape Breton. During the siege on land, Admiral Warren, with a fleet, guarded the approaches to the harbor, and, after the capture of a sixty-four gun ship laden with military stores, the governor of the city sent out a flag of truce, and offered terms of capitulation, which were accepted, and the city, the fort, and the batteries were surrendered to an army composed of fishermen, farmers, and mechanics.

9. The next year, the French sent a large naval
1746. force, with orders to ravage the whole coast; but sickness, tempest, the sudden death of its commander, and other disasters, frustrated their intentions. The
1747. French fleet sent the following year was captured.

10. Nothing further was effected by either of the contending powers, and a treaty was concluded at
1748. Aix-la-Chapelle in 1748. By the terms of the treaty, all places captured during the war were to be restored, and, much to the grief of the colonists, Louisbourg again reverted to the French.

11. But the French still pursued their former policy. They built forts, encroaching on land which clearly
1750. belonged to English grants, and forbid English traders trafficking with the Indians. In pursuance of this threat, several traders were seized and carried as prisoners to their fort on Presque Isle,* and some to Canada.

* Presque Isle, on Lake Erie, Pennsylvania.

1752. 12. The tribes of Indians friendly to the English had given repeated warnings of French encroachments, and suggested the importance of building a fort at the junction of the Alleghany and Monongahela Rivers. But two years were allowed to pass away, before active measures were adopted by either the colonial or British governments.

1753. 13. Governor Dinwiddie of Virginia resolved to send "a person of distinction to the commander of the French forces, to know his reasons for invading the British dominions, while peace subsisted." He selected George Washington for this important mission, who, although not yet twenty-two years of age, was better qualified for its duties than any other man in Virginia.

14. In the middle of November, with an interpreter and four attendants, and an old pioneer of the wilderness as a guide, he started from Will's Creek (now Cumberland). Here he left the abodes of civilized life, and journeyed through immense forests, across mountains, rocky ravines, and swollen streams. In nine days he reached the fork of the Ohio, then a wild, unbroken solitude. Here the party crossed the Alleghany, and proceeded towards Venango, where they were hospitably received and entertained for several days.

15. At Fort Le Boëuff, French Creek, Washington was courteously received by the French commander, St. Pierre, to whom he delivered Dinwiddie's letter. On his return, their horses were found to be so fatigued, they left them, and proceeded on foot. On the 16th of January 1754. he reached Williamsburg, and delivered the reply of the French commander to Governor Dinwiddie.

16. The reply of the French commander was courteous, but evasive. Major Washington had heard enough on his expedition to be satisfied that the French only wished to

1754. gain time, and that they intended to descend the Ohio early in the spring, and take possession of the country. A company was therefore despatched to the fork of the Ohio to build a fort, and a body of troops enlisted and sent out under the command of Washington, now made lieutenant-colonel.

17. The party at the fork of the Ohio had not half completed their fort, when they were surprised by a French force from Venango, and compelled to withdraw. The French then completed the fort, which was named Duquesne,* in honor of the governor of New France.

18. Washington with his detachment made a toilsome progress through the wilderness. On his arrival at the Great Meadows, he made an intrenchment, and sent out scouts to reconnoitre the position of the enemy. Assisted by some friendly Indians, they found the hiding-place of the French detachment. Coming on them by surprise, an action ensued, which resulted in the defeat of the French, ten of whom were killed, including Jumonville, their leader. This was the first battle of the French and Indian War.

19. But while the French were constantly increasing in numbers, Washington received no reinforcement, and was compelled to fall back on a palisaded fort, which was named Fort Necessity, on account of the famine attendant on its construction. Here he was attacked by a large body of the enemy, and, after considerable skirmishing, the French commander proposed terms of capitulation, which were accepted by Washington, and the fort was abandoned.

1755. 20. In the following year, the British government prepared for military operations in America, and General Braddock, a veteran soldier, was sent as com-

* Duquesne—spelled thus by Irving and Bancroft.

1755. mander of all the forces in the colonies. On his arrival, a convention of colonial governors was held at Alexandria, and four expeditions against the French were agreed upon. They were to be sent against Fort Duquesne, Niagara, Crown Point, and Nova Scotia.

21. General Braddock set out from Alexandria on the 20th of April. He was joined by Colonel Washington at Fredericktown, who went as one of his aides-de-camp. On the 19th of May the army reached Fort Cumberland, from which place military roads had to be cut through the woods for their passage. Their progress was slow and toilsome, and it was the 9th of July when the advanced army crossed the Monongahela, ten miles from Fort Duquesne.

22. Colonel Washington had advised the general how to proceed against the wily Indian, lurking in ambush, and striking blows when least expected. But his advice was rejected with scorn, and the army held on their way, agreeably to the modes of European warfare. Suddenly the dreadful war whoop burst upon them, and, at the same time, a storm of bullets from a concealed enemy.

23. The regular soldiers were cut down by the Indian rifle, and most of the officers fell while leading on their men. The Virginia troops scattered themselves, and did good service behind trees, from which they could fire on the enemy. Colonel Washington was a conspicuous mark for the rifle. Two horses were shot under him, and four bullets passed through his coat. But he was preserved by Divine Providence for future usefulness.

24. Braddock did all he could to turn back the tide of battle. But five horses were shot under him, and he himself received a mortal wound. The regulars then fled in confusion, and were only saved from total destruction by the bravery of Washington and the provincial troops. The

1755. defeat was total, and the remains of the army continued its retreat until it met the other division under Colonel Dunbar. General Braddock died four days after the battle at the Great Meadows. *[“]His grave may still be seen near the National Road, one mile west of †Fort Necessity.” Colonel Dunbar, on whom the command devolved, destroyed the military stores, and retreated to Philadelphia.

25. The expedition against Nova Scotia was conducted by Generals Monckton and Winslow. They took possession of the country, and compelled the unfortunate inhabitants to leave their homes, and all the products of their industry, and scattered them through the colonies.

26. The troops destined for the reduction of Crown Point assembled at Albany. The artillery, ammunition, and stores were conveyed by water to the portage on the Hudson, where a fort was commenced, called Fort Edward. Here part of the troops remained under General Lyman, while the main force proceeded under General Johnson to Lake George, where they encamped. A body of French troops, led by the Baron de Dieskau, marched against them. Colonel Williams, with a thousand men, was detached to attack the enemy. An action ensued, the English were repulsed, and their leader killed. The action then became general, and, after a long contest, the French gave way. Baron Dieskau was wounded and taken prisoner to the camp, where he died. In this action the brave Chevalier St. Pierre, formerly commander at Venango, was killed. Johnson did not follow up his victory, but having built a fort, which he named William Henry, he returned to Albany.‡

* Bancroft.

† Fort Necessity, in Fayette County, Pennsylvania.

‡ Irving's Life of Washington.

27. The defeat of General Braddock put an end to all vigorous measures against the fort at Niagara. Storms, sickness, the desertion of the Indian allies, and other adverse causes, compelled General Shirley to abandon his projected enterprise and return to Albany. The ill success

1756. of the British left the frontier exposed to all the horrors of savage barbarity, and the inefficiency of the British ministry in providing the means of defence, gave the enemy the advantage in all their expeditions. Oswego was besieged by a large French force under General Montcalm, and the garrison were obliged to capitulate. Sixteen hundred became prisoners of war, and were sent to Montreal. *Forty-five persons were killed; twelve in action, and the others by Indians as they endeavored to escape in the woods; but beyond this there was no massacre.

1757. 28. General Montcalm, with a large body of French and Indians, now besieged Fort William Henry, which was defended by Lieutenant-Colonel Monro, a brave officer. General Webb, at Fort Edward, only fifteen miles distant, with an army of five thousand men, refused to send any assistance, and the old hero was obliged to surrender. By the terms of capitulation, they were to march out with the honors of war, to abandon all but their private effects, and an escort was to attend them on their departure.

29. But the savages, regardless of treaties, commenced the work of plunder and massacre, as the soldiers marched out. Many were tomahawked, and many made prisoners. Montcalm and his officers did all in their power to arrest the massacre. "Kill me," he said, "but spare the English who are under my protection." Six hundred troops reached

Fort Edward, while four hundred who had fled to the French camp, were sent under an escort, and an officer despatched to the Indians to ransom their prisoners.

1758. 30. The campaign of 1757 was marked with disaster to the colonists, and disgrace to the arms of England. But the succeeding campaign was more auspicious. The best prime-minister* who ever wielded the vast power of the British Empire, now held the reins of government, and he selected the bravest generals and most able commanders in the realm for the subjugation of the French power in America. The energies of Pitt infused new life into the army and the colonies, and now victory succeeded victory.

31. Louisbourg was invested by a powerful army under General Amherst. The siege was commenced on the 8th of June; the garrison bravely defended this important place, but they were obliged to surrender; and, on the 27th of the same month, the English took possession of Louisbourg, Cape Breton, and Prince Edward's Island. The garrison became prisoners of war, and, with the sailors and marines, numbering in all more than five thousand men, were sent to England.

32. A powerful force under General Abercrombie advanced against Ticonderoga. They passed down Lake George in boats, and with artillery on rafts. Soon after their landing, in a skirmish with a party, Lord Howe was killed, being the first who fell in the engagement. An attack was made on the fort, but the assailants were repelled with great slaughter, and obliged to retreat. The battle was lost in consequence of the inefficiency of the British general, who was not to be found when his presence was

* William Pitt, afterwards Lord Chatham

1758. needed to rally the fugitives, whereas Montcalm, the French commander, with a watchful eye, superintended every movement on the battle-field.

33. Abercrombie, with the main army, remained at Lake George in supine inactivity. During the year he was superseded by General Amherst, who was appointed commander-in-chief. Soon after the failure to capture Ticonderoga, Colonel Bradstreet proceeded against Fort Frontenac, on the Canadian side of Lake Ontario. The garrison surrendered, and the Americans destroyed the stores which they could not carry off, and, after razing the fortress, returned to Lake George.

34. Pitt, anxious to wipe out the disgrace of Ticonderoga, now directed an expedition against Fort Duquesne. General Forbes, with a body of provincial troops, was intrusted with the command. Colonel Washington, at the head of the Virginia troops, contributed mainly to the success of the expedition. "General Forbes would never, without Washington, have seen the Ohio."*

35. When within fifty miles of the fort, Major Grant was sent to reconnoitre, and ascertain the force of the enemy. But he was suddenly attacked by a large body of French and Indians. The detachment was routed. Two hundred and ninety-five were killed or prisoners, and the remainder were saved from destruction by the coolness and courage of Captain Bullitt of Virginia. At length the army arrived at Fort Duquesne, which they found deserted, the garrison having set fire to the fort the night before, and retreated down the Ohio. On the 25th of November, Washington, with the advanced guard, marched in and planted the British flag on its yet smoking ruins. By

* Bancroft's History of the United States, Vol. IV., p. 308.

common consent the place was named Fort Pitt, in honor of the prime minister, and on its site has sprung up the flourishing city of Pittsburgh.

1759. 36. The following year several expeditions were planned to capture the strongholds of the enemy.

The first executed was against the fort at Niagara. General Prideaux embarked at Oswego on the 1st of July with a large body of troops, and commenced the siege, which was pressed with vigor. On the 20th of July the general was killed by the bursting of a cannon, and Sir William Johnson now conducted the siege with skill and courage. Being told that a French force was marching against him, he sent out a detachment, which routed the enemy, and, on the following day, the fort surrendered, and the garrison marched out with the honors of war.

37. In the month of July, General Amherst advanced against Ticonderoga and Crown Point. The garrisons, unable to retain these posts, abandoned them, and made a stand at the Isle aux Noix for the protection of Montreal. The general occupied his time in repairing the dismantled forts, and then turned back, instead of proceeding against the enemy.

38. Wolfe, with eight thousand men, ascended the St. Lawrence in June, and, on the 26th, disembarked on the island of Orleans. Montcalm commanded the post, with troops more numerous than the assailants, but not so well disciplined. Wolfe established batteries at the west point of the island, and at Point Levi, on the south bank of the St. Lawrence. Anxious for a decisive action, on the 9th of July he crossed over in boats from the island to the north bank of the St. Lawrence, and encamped below the Montmorency.

39. On the 18th of July Wolfe made a reconnoitering

1759. expedition up the river, and passed Quebec unharmed. Returning to Montmorency, he resolved to attack Montcalm in his camp. But his grenadiers were repulsed with a loss of four hundred men. But in the mean time it was resolved to land and surprise the enemy. This was effected in the darkness of the night, on the 13th of September. The landing took place near Cape Diamond. Wolfe was among the first who landed and climbed the steep ascent, where they put to flight a sergeant's guard posted at the summit, and by the break of day his army was in battle array on the Plains of Abraham.

40. Montcalm immediately summoned all his forces, and led them to the attack. The English reserved their fire until their assailants were within forty yards, and then discharged deadly volleys. They, however, suffered from the lurking Indians, who singled out the officers. Wolfe was wounded by a ball in the wrist. Binding a handkerchief around the wound, he led on the grenadiers to charge the foe with fixed bayonets. He now received a wound in his breast, which proved to be mortal. Being borne off to the rear, water was brought to quench his thirst. "They run," cried one of the attendants, "see how they run!" "Who run?" demanded the dying general. "The enemy, sir, they give way everywhere." Giving some orders to the officers round him, he exclaimed, "Now I can die in peace." These were his last words. Montcalm was mortally wounded while endeavoring to rally his flying troops, and died the following morning.

41. Preparations were now made for an assault on the city, but the garrison were dispirited, and the inhabitants clamorous for a surrender. Quebec therefore capitulated on the 17th of September, and was taken possession of by

the British. The following year the French made
1760. an unsuccessful attempt to recapture Quebec, and Montreal soon after surrendered to the English forces under the commander-in-chief, General Amherst.

42. The war was now at an end in America, though it continued in Europe until the treaty of peace in

1763. 1763, by which France surrendered to Great Britain all Canada, Nova Scotia, Cape Breton and adjacent islands, and Louisiana to the Mississippi River. Of the vast possessions France had proudly claimed, she retained only a share in the fisheries and two small islands, St. Pierre and Miquelon. She also ceded to Spain, New Orleans, and all Louisiana west of the Mississippi.

Questions on Colonial History to the end of the French War.—

1. How far has the history been traced?
2. With what nations was England at war? What is said of Deerfield? What is said of Indian warfare?
3. What expedition was fitted out? What place was captured, and what was it named, and why?
4. Why did a fleet sail from England? Where was an army assembled? What disaster occurred? How was the war ended? What was ceded to the English?
5. What was claimed both by France and England? What post was established by the colony of New York? What did the French establish?
6. Where was Fort Niagara built? What was France doing?
7. What war broke out in 1744? What was done by a body of French troops?
8. Describe the siege and capture of Louisbourg. Who was the general, and of what classes was his army composed?
9. What occurred in 1747? In 1748?
10. Where was a treaty of peace signed? In what year?
11. What did the French still continue to do?
12. What notice was given by friendly Indians? What did they suggest?

13. Whom did Governor Dinwiddie send on a mission to the French commander?

14. Describe Washington's journey. How were the party received at Venango?

15. How was Washington received at Fort Le Boeuff?

16. What is said of the reply of the French commander? For what purpose was a company sent to the fork of the Ohio? Who commanded the troops sent out?

17. By whom were the party at the fork of the Ohio surprised? What did the French then do? What was the fort named?

18. Where did Colonel Washington throw up an intrenchment? Describe the battle.

19. Why did Washington withdraw his troops? Where did he make a stand? What was the result?

20. Who was sent by the British government to command the forces in America? What expeditions were agreed upon?

21. When did General Braddock set out? By whom was he joined? What had to be done after leaving Fort Cumberland?

22. What did Colonel Washington advise? How was his advice received? What took place?

23. Describe the battle. What is said of Washington?

24. What is said of Braddock? How were the regulars saved from destruction? When and where did General Braddock die? What did Colonel Dunbar do?

25. Describe the expedition against Nova Scotia.

26. Where was Fort Edward built? Where did General Johnson proceed with his troops? Who marched against him? Describe the battle. What distinguished man fell in the action? What fort did Johnson build?

27. What causes prevented General Shirley's projected enterprise against Niagara? By whom was Oswego besieged? What is said of a massacre?

28. Describe the siege of Fort William Henry. What were the terms of capitulation?

29. What did the savages attempt as the garrison marched out? What did Montcalm and his officers do? Repeat his words.

30. What is said of the campaign of 1757? Who now became prime minister? (See note.)

81. Who laid siege to Louisbourg? Of what places did the English take possession?

82. Describe General Abercrombie's assault on Fort Ticonderoga? What officer fell? Who lost the battle? Who commanded the French?

83. By whom was Abercrombie superseded? Describe the expedition of Colonel Bradstreet.

84. Who marched against Fort Duquesne? What is said of Colonel Washington? Repeat the quotation.

85. What is said of Major Grant's reconnoitering party? Who came to their rescue? As the army approached what did the French do? What was the place named, and what city stands on its site?

86. Describe General Prideaux's siege of Niagara. What caused his death, and who succeeded him? Why did he send out a detachment?

87. Describe Amherst's expedition against Ticonderoga and Crown Point.

88. Where did General Wolfe disembark? Where did he establish batteries? What is said of Montcalm? What did Wolfe do in July?

89. Describe Wolfe's further movements. What was done on the 13th of September?

90. Describe Montcalm's attack. What is said of General Wolfe? When informed of the flight of the enemy, what did he say? What is related of Montcalm?

91. When did Quebec surrender? What did the French attempt in 1760? What town was surrendered the same year?

92. What is said of the war? What was surrendered by the treaty of 1763? What did France retain? What did France cede to Spain?

FROM THE FRENCH WAR TO THE REVOLUTION.

1763. 1. The colonists were congratulating themselves on peace, when an Indian insurrection broke out. The Delawares and Shawnees, with other tribes, were foremost, led by an active warrior named Pontiac. An attack was made at a concerted time, on all the posts from Detroit to Fort Pitt. The frontiers of Pennsylvania, Maryland, and Virginia were laid waste, and a considerable time elapsed before the frontier was restored to any degree of tranquillity.

1764. 2. The British ministry, on the termination of the war with France, determined to maintain a large standing army in America, and to tax the colonies for its support. They revived and enforced the navigation laws, which were ruinous to American commerce, as the system closed their ports against foreign vessels; obliged them to export their productions to British ports, to import European goods from England, and in English ships. Parliament now imposed duties on sugar and other West Indian products imported into the colonies.

1765. 3. The colonists sent agents to England to remonstrate against these impositions, but without avail; for now the Stamp Act was brought forward by the ministry, and passed by Parliament. This act required that all notes, bonds, and other legal instruments should be executed on stamped paper, which should pay a duty to the crown. "Unless stamps were used, marriages would be null, notes of hand valueless, ships at sea prizes to the first

captors, suits at law impossible, transfers of real estate invalid, inheritances irreclaimable.”*

4. The authors of the Stamp Act never dreamed of the furious opposition which awaited their favorite measure in the colonies. The day on which the “Act” was to go into operation was ushered in with tolling of bells, and other signs of mourning. The stamp officers were resisted, or burnt in effigy, and, by common consent, not a single stamp was used in one of the colonies. The merchants of New York, Philadelphia, and Boston resolved to import no more British manufactures, unless the Stamp Act should be repealed.

1766. 5. The next year a change took place in the British ministry, and the Stamp Act was repealed, to the great joy of the colonists. There was, however, a clause in the repeal, which declared that the king, with the consent of Parliament, had the power and authority to make laws of sufficient force and validity to “bind the colonies, and people of America, in all cases whatsoever.”

1767. 6. The discontent of the colonists was excited by other Acts of Parliament. One imposed duties on glass, red and white lead, painters’ colors, pasteboard, and tea, and declared an American revenue expedient. Another act authorized naval officers to enforce the navigation laws. These and other oppressive laws were resisted by the colonies as subversive of their charters, and a violation of the principles of constitutional liberty.

7. The General Court of Massachusetts sent a circular to other colonial assemblies, to unite with them in measures of redress. The governors of these colonies then dissolved

* Bancroft.

these legislatures, and thus increased the excitement. A petition to the governor of Massachusetts, to convene the legislature, having been rejected, the inhabitants of Boston assembled in "town meeting," and voted to forbear the use and importation of British goods, while the tax remained in force.

1768. 8. The British government found that the colonists remained true to their principles, in spite of threats and coercive measures. Taxation without being represented in the affairs of the government, was an encroachment they would not submit to. They were determined to withstand all efforts on the part of the ministry having a tendency to abridge their freedom. The ministry, on the other hand, determined to apply the strong hand of power in compelling obedience. Accordingly, in September, a squadron, with two regiments of soldiers and artillery, appeared in Boston harbor.

9. On the 1st of October the troops were landed, and paraded through the town. Some of the troops were encamped on the Common, others were quartered in the State House, and a portion in Faneuil Hall. The inhabitants refused to furnish quarters, and the approach of winter obliged the governor to hire houses for the soldiers' winter lodgings.

1769. 10. For more than a year the troops in Boston remained in inactivity, and the ministers of the British crown did nothing to satisfy the demands of the colonists. But the people were everywhere active and untiring. Every colony gave its direct approval of the course of Massachusetts, and its determination to resist tyranny.

11. Disturbances now frequently occurred between the

citizens and soldiers. On the 5th of March a conflict ensued, when the soldiers fired on the inhabitants, killed three, and wounded eight others, two of them mortally. The Boston Massacre added another link to the chain of grievances which already oppressed a loyal and confiding nation. Parliament now repealed the taxes on glass, paper, painters' colors, and everything except tea. The king's friends retained that duty rather to assert a claim to tax America, than from any prospect of a lucrative revenue. But in America the obnoxious principle still existed, and the people refused to use the taxed article. No tea was therefore imported.

12. The East India Company now made preparations to send large cargoes of tea to America. Philadelphia began the work of preventing its landing. Its inhabitants denied the right of Parliament to tax America, condemned the duty on tea, and declared every one who favored the tax an enemy to his country, and requested the agents of the East India Company to resign. The people of New York resolved the tea should not be landed. The people of Boston passed similar resolutions, and requested the consignees to send the ships back. But they equivocated, and hoped to gain by delay. The custom-house refused a clearance, the governor refused his permission, and the people prepared for the struggle. On the night of the 6th of December, a band of men disguised as Indians took possession of the three tea ships at the wharf, broke open the chests, and emptied the contents into the bay, without any injury to the vessels.

13. The general opposition in America to the principle of taxation, had embittered the king and ministry against all the colonies; but this last bold act con-

1774. concentrated all their wrath on the devoted town of Boston. An act was passed (called the Boston Port Bill) by which all lading and unlading of goods should cease in the town and harbor, on and after the 4th day of June, and the collection of customs be transferred to Salem. Another act decreed that all judges and magistrates should be appointed by the king. It was also enacted, that any person indicted for crimes might be sent to another colony, or to Great Britain, for trial.

14. These oppressive acts of the British ministry served but to strengthen the bonds of union throughout the colonies. It was resolved to hold a general congress of the different provinces. This body assembled in Philadelphia on the 5th of September. It was composed of fifty-five delegates, representing all the colonies except Georgia. They adopted a series of resolutions, as a "declaration of colonial rights," in which were enumerated their natural rights to the enjoyment of life, liberty, and property, and their rights as British subjects. They also agreed to enter into a non-importation, non-consumption, and non-exportation agreement, and they sent an address to the king, another to the people of Great Britain, and a memorial to the inhabitants of British America. Having finished their labors, they adjourned on the 26th of October.

15. In order to enforce the obnoxious laws, and intimidate the people of Massachusetts, General Gage had been appointed military governor, and he occupied Boston with an army, to compel obedience. But he had no power beyond the town. The colonists were firm in their determination to resist the arbitrary decrees of king and parliament, and they were everywhere arming and preparing for the expected contest. The power of Great

1774. Britain was at an end, and the united colonies were then on the eve of becoming free and independent, in consequence of the unwise and unjust policy of what was then regarded as the mother country.

Questions on Colonial History from the French War to the Revolution.—1. What Indian tribes made war? Who was their leader? What colonies suffered most?

2. What was determined by the British ministry? What restrictions were imposed by the navigation laws? What duties were imposed?

3. What act was passed in 1765? What was required by this act? Recite the quotation.

4. How was the Stamp Act received in the colonies? What was done by the merchants?

5. What was done the next year? What clause was contained in the repeal?

6. What duties were imposed in 1767? What other act gave offence?

7. What was voted by the inhabitants of Boston?

8. What measure did the colonists refuse to submit to? What did the ministry do?

9. When and where were troops landed?

10. What is now said of the people?

11. What took place on the 5th of March? What was done by Parliament? What is said of tea?

12. What did Philadelphia do to prevent the landing of tea? New York? Boston?

13. What was enacted by the Boston Port Bill? What other acts were passed?

14. When and where did the first general congress meet? What did they adopt? What was agreed upon? When did they adjourn?

15. Who was appointed military governor of Massachusetts? Why was he sent? What were the colonists doing?

THE REVOLUTION.

1775. 1. The people of the colonies had failed in every attempt at conciliation; their petitions were spurned, and their remonstrances disregarded, and now there seemed to be no resource left them but an appeal to arms. Preparations were made on both sides for approaching hostilities, but nothing decisive occurred until the 19th of April. General Gage determined to surprise and destroy the magazine of military stores at Concord, about eighteen miles from Boston.

2. For this purpose a body of troops was despatched, in the silence and secrecy of night, under command of Lieutenant-Colonel Smith, and took the road to Concord. But, though General Gage used every precaution to conceal this expedition from the inhabitants, and issued strict orders that none should leave the town, yet messengers were sent out, and signals given to alarm the country. When the advanced party arrived at Lexington, they found about seventy persons in arms, drawn up in two ranks, on the village green, near the church.

3. Major Pitcairn rode in front, and cried out, "Disperse, you rebels, throw down your arms, and disperse!" He then discharged his pistol, and gave orders to his men to fire. The order was immediately followed by a destructive fire of musketry. The British then proceeded to Concord, and destroyed the military stores which the colonists had not previously removed. While thus engaged, the inhabitants of the neighboring towns were hastening to join the Concord militia.



MAJOR PITCAIRN AT LEXINGTON.

1775. 4. Colonel Smith now made preparations for his retrograde march to Boston, and the Americans for a galling fire, which was kept up until they reached Lexington. Here Lord Percy, with a large detachment, came to the relief of the exhausted troops, and, after a short interval for rest and refreshment, continued the retreat. The firing was renewed by the pursuers until the British reached Charlestown Common, when General Heath, who had taken the command, brought the provincials to a halt. In this memorable battle the British loss was two hundred and seventy-three, in killed, wounded, and missing, while that of the Americans was eighty-eight.

5. The cry of the blood shed at Lexington and Concord went through the whole land, and multitudes hastened to the relief of their brethren of Massachusetts. General Gage and his army were closely besieged in Boston, and every avenue to the surrounding country was strictly guarded. When the news reached Georgia, that colony joined the

1775. union, thus making thirteen colonies joined to resist the oppressions of the British government.

6. As war was now considered inevitable, it was resolved to surprise the old forts of Ticonderoga and Crown Point, which commanded the approach to Canada. A party of men enlisted for this purpose, under the command of Colonel Ethan Allen, who arrived at Ticonderoga on the morning of the 10th of May. Guided by a boy of the neighborhood, they rushed through a sally port-hole, and gave three cheers, which roused up the sleeping garrison. The commander appeared at his door, and asked Allen by what authority he acted. "In the name of the great Jehovah, and the Continental Congress," exclaimed Allen. The fort was immediately surrendered.

7. Colonel Warner, second in command to Allen, was sent against Crown Point, which surrendered without resistance. A detachment took possession of Skenesborough, now Whitehall, and captured a schooner. Colonel Benedict Arnold was sent in this schooner to capture St. John's, which he effected, and took a sloop of war, with two brass six-pounders and seven men. Thus did this band of patriots gain the command of Lakes George and Champlain, and open the great highway into Canada.

8. On the 10th of May, but a few hours after the surrender of Ticonderoga, the Continental Congress again met in Philadelphia. They elected Peyton Randolph president, but that gentleman being obliged to return to Virginia, John Hancock, of Massachusetts, was selected to succeed him. A federal union was formed, vesting in Congress the power of making peace or war, of entering into treaties and alliances, and of legislating on all such matters as regarded the general security and welfare, and George Washington was elected commander-in-chief.

1775. 9. While Congress was in session, great events were transpiring in Boston and its vicinity. On the 25th of May several transports and ships of war arrived from England, bringing large reinforcements under Generals Howe, Burgoyne, and Clinton. General Gage now determined to take the field, and dislodge the Americans who were besieging the royal army in Boston. But the provincials, anticipating such a movement, sent out a force to throw up an intrenchment on Bunker Hill. On the night of the 16th of June, the party, under command of Colonel Prescott, set out in fulfilment of this duty, but finding that Breed's Hill was nearer to Boston, and had a better command of the town and shipping, it was determined to fortify that position instead of Bunker Hill.

10. Early on next morning the British beheld the Americans at their work, and commenced firing upon them. As nothing was effected by this cannonade, a large detachment under command of Major-General Howe was sent to dislodge the provincials. The enemy advanced in two columns, discharging a heavy fire of musketry, but, in obedience to General Putnam's orders, the Americans reserved their fire till the enemy were within thirty paces. When the British came within the prescribed distance, a deadly fire was poured upon them from muskets, rifles, and fowling-pieces. The enemy were thrown into confusion, and precipitately retreated.

11. The British now prepared for a second attack. Charlestown was set on fire, and wrapped in a general conflagration, while the enemy ascended the hill to storm the redoubt. They were received as before; whole ranks cut down by the destructive fire of the provincials, and again compelled to retreat. They now made their third attack, when, the ammunition of the provincials being

1775. expended, Colonel Prescott gave the order to retreat, which they did in good order. The British now gained the redoubt, to them a dear-bought victory. Major Pitcairn fell, mortally wounded, as he was entering the works, and the enemy's total loss was one thousand and fifty-four, including many officers. The American loss was four hundred and fifty, among whom was General Warren, one of the noblest and purest minded patriots.

12. After General Washington's appointment to the chief command, he set out for Massachusetts. On his way, intelligence met him of the battle of Bunker Hill, and the noble stand made by the inexperienced militia. On the 3d of July he took formal command of the army at Cambridge. Here he found a body of raw militia, totally inadequate to carry on a siege, and sadly deficient in clothing and military supplies. He now urged on Congress the necessity of supplies, took measures to strengthen the fortifications around Boston, and improve and perfect the discipline of his army.

13. Preparations were made for the invasion of Canada. Arnold, who had assisted in the capture of Ticonderoga, was sent with a body of troops, and, after a toilsome march through the wilderness, arrived at Point Levi, near Quebec, which he could at once have captured had he been able to cross the river. When he did so, and drew up his army on the Heights of Abraham, the garrison was strongly reinforced. Arnold, therefore, was obliged to withdraw, and wait for the main body of the army.

14. The other expedition was conducted by General Schuyler, who had sent out a reconnoitering party under Colonel Allen and Major Brown. The former, with a small force, attempted the capture of Montreal, but they were repulsed, made prisoners, and treated as rebels and outlaws,

1775. unworthy of the courtesy shown to prisoners of war. Colonel Allen himself was loaded with irons, and sent to England, where he endured a rigorous captivity.

15. General Schuyler was now attacked with serious illness, and the expedition was conducted by Montgomery, the second in command. He pressed on and laid siege to St. John's, on the Sorel River, sending a detachment to Fort Chamblie, which was captured, with a quantity of powder and other military stores. The garrison of St. John's, hard pressed, and obtaining no relief, was obliged to surrender, and Montgomery proceeded to Montreal, which, unprepared for defence, immediately submitted.

16. Montgomery now placed garrisons in Montreal and the captured forts, and, with such of his troops as he could persuade to accompany him, proceeded down the St. Lawrence to co-operate with Arnold in the attack on Quebec. Their united forces did not exceed nine hundred men, with whom they commenced the siege; but being unable to make a breach in the walls, an assault was determined on. Before daylight on the 31st of December, in the midst of a driving snow-storm, attacks were made on the opposite sides of the lower town by Montgomery and Arnold. Montgomery advanced along a narrow beach on the river to a picket and block-house, both of which were deserted on his approach. He now paused a moment to urge on his troops, who were stumbling along the difficult pass, exclaiming, "Quebec is ours." He again advanced, until, within forty paces of the battery, a single cannon, loaded with grape-shot, was discharged, and the brave general and one of his aids were killed on the spot.

17. The soldiers, on the death of their commander, retreated in confusion, and abandoned their half-won battle-

1775. field. Arnold, on the other side, had entered the town, but was severely wounded when near a battery, and was carried off. Captain Morgan took the command, and stormed the battery. But the death of Montgomery and retreat of his troops enabled the English to send large reinforcements, and a severe contest followed, when Morgan and his gallant band were compelled to surrender as prisoners of war.

18. Arnold, with the remainder of the army, retired to a short distance from Quebec, and maintained his position, giving constant alarm to its garrison. For his gallant services Congress promoted him to the rank of brigadier-general.

19. The events of this year, and the popular rising of an outraged people, put an end to the authority of the royal governors. Lord Dunmore, of Virginia, removed the powder from the magazine at Williamsburg to an English vessel of war. The indignation of the people was aroused, and they demanded immediate restoration of the powder. The governor saw that resistance was useless, and paid over to Patrick Henry, who had the chief command, the full value of the abstracted powder. Soon after, Dunmore left the colony, and, with his family, went on board a British man-of-war. From this vessel he frequently landed detachments to attack different points, and offered freedom to all slaves who would join his standard. Norfolk was attacked and burned, after which atrocious act he left the colony, and the governors of North Carolina, South Carolina, and New York soon after fled from their respective governments.

Questions on the Revolution, Events of 1775.—1. How had the colonists been treated? What was determined by General Gage?

2. Who commanded the expedition? What did they find at Lexington?

3. What did Major Pitcairn say? What was done by the troops at Lexington? At Concord?

4. What occurred on their return? Who came to their relief? What losses were sustained?

5. What effect was produced by the news of this battle? What did Georgia now do?

6. Who captured Fort Ticonderoga?

7. What was captured by Colonel Warner? By Colonel Benedict Arnold?

8. When was the second meeting of Congress? What powers were vested in Congress by the Federal Union? Who was appointed commander-in-chief?

9. Who was besieged in Boston? What British generals arrived with reinforcements? What height was fortified by the Americans?

10. What was done by the British on the following morning? Who marched against the American intrenchments? Who commanded the Americans? What was the result of the first attack?

11. What town was burned? What was the result of the second attack? The third attack? What British officer was killed, and what was the total loss? What was the American loss? What is said of General Warren?

12. When and where did General Washington take command of the army? In what was it deficient?

13. What is said of Arnold's expedition to Canada?

14. By whom was the other expedition conducted? Who were taken prisoners, and how were they treated? What was done with Colonel Allen?

15. Why did the expedition devolve on Montgomery? What places were captured?

16. With whom did Montgomery unite his forces? What place did they besiege? Describe the assault of Quebec. Describe Montgomery's advance, and give an account of his death.

17. What happened to Arnold? What was done by Captain Morgan? Why was he defeated?

18. What did Arnold do with the remaining troops? What rank did Congress confer on him?

19. What is said of Lord Dunmore? Who demanded restitution of the powder he had taken? What town was burned by his orders? What other governors fled from the colonies?

EVENTS OF 1776.

1776. 1. The siege of Boston continued through the winter, during which nothing occurred of special interest. On the night of March 2d, a cannonade was commenced, which was kept up until the 4th, when General Thomas, with a detachment, threw up two forts on Dorchester Heights during the darkness of the night. At daybreak the next morning the British beheld these formidable batteries looming up before their astonished gaze.

2. The following night a body of troops embarked to attack the American works, but a furious storm prevented the landing of the transports, and the attempt was relinquished. It was therefore determined to evacuate the town, which was done on the 17th, the troops embarking, and the ships leaving the harbor, without being molested by the Americans. General Washington, with his army, marched into the town the same day, to the great joy of the inhabitants, and soon after, with the principal part of the army, proceeded to New York, which he supposed would be the next point of attack by the enemy.

3. General Thomas, who had been sent to the relief of the army in Canada, took command of the troops at Quebec about the last of April. But the garrison had been reinforced, and the Americans enfeebled by disease and privations. In this condition they were attacked by General Carleton, and obliged to retreat, with the loss of their artillery and baggage. The prisoners were, however, treated

1776. with great humanity, and the sick taken to the hospitals, and liberated on their recovery. General Thomas continued his retreat to the mouth of the Sorel, where he was reinforced. But soon after his arrival he was taken ill with the small-pox, and died on the 2d of June. General Sullivan succeeded to the command, but was unable to compete with the greatly strengthened force of the enemy. The Americans retreated from post to post, and finally evacuated Canada on the 18th of June.

4. While these events were transpiring in Canada, Sir Henry Clinton, with a powerful armament, and assisted by a fleet under command of Sir Peter Parker, made an attack on Charleston, South Carolina, June 28th. General Lee had been sent to the defence of the city. When the fleet came abreast of Sullivan's Island, a fire was opened from a fort newly erected, which did terrible execution; the ships were disabled, and withdrew from the contest. In honor of its gallant defender, the post was called Fort Moultrie.

5. At this time Congress had under discussion the greatest question ever debated in America. The colonies had asked for justice, and had been treated with contempt, their rights disregarded, their liberties trampled on, their towns burned, and their people slaughtered. It was therefore resolved in Congress, "that these united colonies are, and of right ought to be, free and independent states." The Declaration of Independence was announced to the people on the 4th of July, causing general joy and gratulation.

6. General Howe, with the army that had evacuated Boston, took possession of Staten Island on the 2d of July, and on the 12th was joined by his brother, Admiral Lord Howe, with an army of British and Hessians. He was soon after reinforced by the arrival of Sir Henry Clinton, accompanied by Lord Cornwallis and three thousand troops.

1776. General Greene was stationed at Brooklyn with a considerable force, as it was supposed the enemy intended to march across Long Island for the attack on New York.

7. Some distance east of Brooklyn is a range of hills, then thickly covered with woods. Through these, three passes extended, which General Greene had intended to have guarded and occupied, but in the midst of his arduous duties, he was taken ill with a raging fever, and the temporary command devolved on General Sullivan. The enemy landed on the 22d, and advanced on the American lines. Washington crossed over to Brooklyn, and finding a want of order in the camp, and the absence of proper discipline, he gave the command of Long Island to General Putnam. He himself retained the command at New York, not knowing when it might be attacked by the enemy's ships of war.

8. About nine o'clock in the morning of the 27th, Sir Henry Clinton, with a large force, marched through by-roads, and silently and early next morning moved through the Bedford pass, which had been left unguarded. On the right a large force gained possession of the heights, and thus the Americans were almost surrounded, and placed between two fires. Some broke through the enemy's lines, but many were killed or taken prisoners. Among the latter were Generals Sullivan and Stirling. Washington was unable to prevent this catastrophe. He now expected that the enemy, flushed with victory, would storm the works, and prepared for a desperate defence. But the British general was unwilling to risk the loss of life which would ensue in such an attack. He therefore withdrew his men out of the reach of musketry, and encamped for the night.

9. The next day the British troops encamped in front of the American lines, but nothing was attempted. On

the 29th, it appeared evident that the fleet would
1776. co-operate with the army in surrounding the Americans. Washington therefore procured boats, and in the night silently crossed the East River with all his troops, artillery, and stores, landing them safely in New York. To the astonishment of the British, on the morning of the 30th not an American soldier remained in Brooklyn.

10. In a council of officers it was thought advisable to abandon the city, and accordingly the main army withdrew to the rocky heights in the northern part of New York, or Manhattan Island. Here a fortification was thrown up on Harlem Heights. On the 15th of September a strong detachment of the British crossed the East River without much opposition. A skirmish took place on Harlem Plains, in which the Americans were victorious. But the British were arriving in great numbers, and the Americans abandoned their works on New York Island, with the exception of Fort Washington, and proceeded to White Plains. Here a battle ensued on the 28th of October, when the Americans, being outnumbered, were obliged to retreat to their intrenchments.

11. During the night the fortifications were strengthened, in expectation of an attack the following day. But *General Howe, when he perceived the strengthened works of the Americans, postponed his meditated assault, and threw up lines and redoubts in front of the American camp, as if preparing to cannonade it. On the night of the 31st, Washington retired with his main army to the rocky hills of Northcastle, and soon after the whole British army left White Plains.

12. On the 12th of November Washington crossed the

* Irving's Life of Washington, Vol. II., p. 395.

1776. Hudson, leaving General Lee in command of the troops at Northcastle. Soon after, Fort Washington was assaulted, and, after a brave resistance, the garrison compelled to surrender. Fort Lee was abandoned, and Washington, with his dispirited and diminished army, successively retreated through Newark, New Brunswick, Princeton, Trenton, and finally to Pennsylvania, closely pursued by the British to the banks of the Delaware.

13. General Lee had been directed by the commander-in-chief to leave his post, and march to his assistance. But it was not until the 4th of December that he crossed the Hudson, and then marched in the slowest manner, though apprised of the peril of Washington and his army. Finally he was surprised and made prisoner by a body of British cavalry, and his command devolved on General Sullivan, who immediately marched to the relief of General Washington.

14. Congress had adjourned to Baltimore, in consequence of the approach of the enemy. The British troops were scattered through the different towns in New Jersey, and their commander supposed that the campaign was ended. But on the night of the 25th of December, Washington crossed the Delaware, eight miles above Trenton, and early the next morning attacked the Hessians, who were totally unprepared for the assault. Colonel Rahl was mortally wounded, and nearly a thousand were made prisoners.

15. The prisoners were now transported across the Delaware, and moved on from town to town, until they reached Winchester, in Virginia. With great exertion, Washington induced the troops whose term of enlistment had expired to continue in the army. Hard money was needed, and Robert Morris, of Philadelphia, obtained the required loan, and sent it to camp. Congress invested Washington with

1776. unlimited military power, and having rested and recruited his army, he again crossed the Delaware on the 30th of December, and posted his troops in Trenton, while the British and Hessians were stationed at Princeton, ten miles distant.

Questions on the Events of 1776.—1. What is said of the siege of Boston? What took place on the night of March 2d? What was done by General Thomas?

2. What was done by the British on the following night? What prevented the attack? When was the town evacuated? What did General Washington do?

3. When did General Thomas take command of the army in Canada? By whom were they attacked? To what place did General Thomas retreat, and when did he die? Who succeeded him? When did the Americans evacuate Canada?

4. By whom was an attack made on Charleston? Who had been sent to defend the city? What took place at Sullivan's Island? What was the fort named, and why?

5. What was resolved in Congress? When was the Declaration of Independence announced to the people?

6. What did General Howe do on the 2d of July? By whom was he joined? By whom reinforced? Where was General Greene?

7. When did the enemy land? On whom did Washington confer the command of Long Island? What command did he retain?

8. Describe Sir Henry Clinton's advance. The British forces on the right. Between what were the Americans? What generals were taken prisoners?

9. What was done by the British the following day? What was done by Washington on the 29th?

10. Did the American army remain in New York? Where did they throw up a fortification? What took place here? Where did the army now go? When and where did a battle take place?

11. What did General Howe do on perceiving the strong fortifications at White Plains? What did Washington do on the 31st?

12. Describe Washington's movements of the 12th of November.

What fort was captured? What abandoned? Where did Washington successively retreat?

13. What orders were given to General Lee? What misfortune happened? On whom did his command devolve?

14. To what place did Congress adjourn? What did Washington do on the night of December 25th? What battle took place on the 26th? Give the result of the battle.

15. What was done with the prisoners? What power was conferred on Washington? What did he do on the 30th of December? Where were the British and Hessians?

EVENTS OF 1777.

1777. 1. The commencement of the new year found

Washington at Trenton, where he was joined by the troops under Generals Mifflin and Cadwalader. Towards evening of the 2d, Cornwallis, with a strong force from Princeton, attacked him. The two armies were on opposite sides of a stream which flows through Trenton, and which the enemy made repeated attempts to cross. Cornwallis felt sure of capturing the American army the next day, and desisted for the night. But at midnight Washington marched with his army by a circuitous route, unperceived and unsuspected by the enemy. Next morning he was at Princeton, where an engagement took place between some British regiments on the way to Trenton, and the advancing Americans. The battle was sharp, but soon decided in favor of the latter. The British lost one hundred killed, and three hundred prisoners. The American loss was about thirty men and several officers, among the latter of whom was the brave General Mercer.

2. Cornwallis, who had heard the American cannon, supposed at first that it was thunder; but being soon



FALL OF GENERAL MERCER.

1777. undeceived, marched at once on Princeton. But he arrived too late. The battle was over, and Washington, with his army, was on his way to New Brunswick, to capture the military stores of the British. But the enemy was fast approaching in strong force, and the Americans were so exhausted, that it was deemed expedient to abandon the design, and retreat to the hills of East Jersey. Accordingly, Washington established his winter quarters at Morristown, whence he sent out detachments to harass the enemy and keep them in a state of siege in their quarters at New Brunswick.

3. The two armies occupied these respective positions until the latter end of May. In the mean time small detachments were sent out from several points. The principal enterprise was directed against Danbury, Connecticut, led by Governor Tryon, at the head of two thousand troops (April 26th). The town was burned, a great quantity of stores belonging to the Americans destroyed, and the inhab-

1777. itants cruelly treated. Perceiving the militia assembling, they retreated, but were attacked, and a severe skirmish ensued. The militia were under the command of Generals Silliman, Wooster, and Arnold. Wooster was mortally wounded in the action, and Arnold narrowly escaped, but General Silliman harassed the enemy all the way to the coast.

4. This destructive expedition was soon after retaliated for by Colonel Meigs, who, accompanied by one hundred and seventy men, crossed Long Island Sound, and attacked the enemy at Sag Harbor, near the eastern end of Long Island. They burned the British vessels, destroyed the storehouses and their contents, took ninety prisoners, and returned to Guilford, without the loss of a man of their party.

5. Towards the end of May, Washington broke up his cantonments at Morristown, and encamped at Middlebrook. His army numbered a little over seven thousand men, who were now posted in a strong position. On the 12th of June, Sir William Howe left New York, and set up his headquarters at New Brunswick. Here he endeavored to bring on a general engagement by a number of feigned movements. But the American general wisely remained at Middlebrook, and General Howe, unable to provoke him to a general action, suddenly withdrew his troops to Staten Island, and left New Jersey in possession of the Americans.

6. General Burgoyne, with a large army, now left St. John's, in Canada (June 16th), for the purpose of effecting a junction with General Howe at New York. He sent out a detachment under Colonel St. Leger, who was to land at Oswego, ravage the valley of the Mohawk, and join the main army at Albany. On the 1st of July he arrived at Ticonderoga, which was garrisoned by three thousand men under General St. Clair, who, finding his position untenable,

1777. abandoned the fort, and, with the army, set forward on the Vermont side of the lake towards Hubbardton. His stores, and a portion of his troops, with the wounded, were sent in boats to Skenesborough (now Whitehall).

7. The flight of the Americans was unfortunately revealed to the British by the light of a burning house, and a pursuit was immediately commenced. The flotilla was overtaken and destroyed, and the main army routed, with a loss of more than three hundred men. * "On the 12th, St. Clair reached Fort Edward, with his troops haggard and exhausted by their long retreat." While these affairs were transpiring in the north, General Prescott, who commanded the British forces in Rhode Island, was surprised and captured by Colonel Barton, at the head of forty men. He was retained for some time a prisoner, and afterwards exchanged for General Lee.

8. The progress of Burgoyne with his army was very slow, in consequence of the obstructions placed in his way by General Schuyler, and he did not reach Fort Edward until the 30th of July. At his approach General Schuyler retired, and took post at Fort Miller, lower down the Hudson, then at Stillwater, and finally at the mouth of the Mohawk. In the mean time Colonel St. Leger was besieging Fort Schuyler, at the head of the navigable waters of the Mohawk. General Herkimer, with a force of militia, marched to the relief of the garrison, but was met at Oriskany by a detachment of Tories and Indians. A fierce battle ensued, and General Herkimer, with four hundred men, was killed.

9. Arnold soon after advanced to the relief of the besieged, and, by sending out exaggerated reports of his

* Irving's Life of Washington, Vol. III., p. 117.

forces, he so terrified the Indians, that they fled,
1777.

and St. Leger was obliged to raise the siege. General Burgoyne now sent out an expedition under Colonel Baum against Bennington, for the purpose of seizing on the stores which the Americans had collected. This detachment was met near Bennington by a large body of New Hampshire militia, under General Stark. Colonel Baum was killed and his party routed. A reinforcement of the enemy, under Colonel Breyman, arrived at Bennington after the battle, who were attacked by Colonel Warner, and defeated. The British loss was seven hundred, generally prisoners (August 16th).

10. General Washington was so well convinced that it was the intention of General Howe to form a junction with Burgoyne, that he advanced with the main army towards the Hudson. On the 23d of July the British fleet put out to sea, and a number of circumstances led Washington to the belief that its destination was Philadelphia, and he set out with his army to the Delaware. On his way he was informed that the fleet had appeared off the capes, and he immediately marched to Philadelphia. Soon after, the British fleet sailed up the Chesapeake, and the army landed near Elkton, and marched towards Philadelphia. Washington took a stand at *Chad's Ford, on Brandywine Creek, where he was attacked by the British (September 11th). The battle lasted through the day, and towards night the Americans were obliged to retreat to Chester, where they rested, and the next day retreated to Philadelphia. Congress adjourned to Lancaster, and afterwards to York.

11. In this battle a number of distinguished foreigners

* Chad's Ford, on Brandywine Creek, is in Chester county, Pennsylvania.

were engaged. The Marquis La Fayette served
1777. as a volunteer, and was severely wounded. Count Pulaski, a Polish nobleman, and General Conway, acquitted themselves with great credit. The American loss in this disastrous battle was, in killed, wounded, and prisoners, twelve hundred, and the British near eight hundred.

12. As soon as Washington's troops were rested, he crossed the Schuylkill to oppose General Howe. The two armies met and skirmishing ensued, but a heavy rain prevented a general battle, and the American troops withdrew. General Wayne, who had been sent to watch the movements of the enemy, was attacked in the night at Paoli, and three hundred of his men were killed. General Howe, by a sudden movement, crossed the Schuylkill, and encamped his army at Germantown, from which place he sent Lord Cornwallis, with a large detachment, to take possession of Philadelphia. That general marched into the city on the 26th of September, with a brilliant staff and escort, and followed by some of the finest troops in the British army; strongly contrasting with the poor and ill-clothed, but determined patriots.

13. General Schuyler continued his active career as chief of the northern army until the arrival of General Gates, who had been appointed the commander. Burgoyne was in a distressed condition. His Indian allies had deserted him, and he found great difficulty in obtaining provisions. He now crossed the Hudson, and posted his army at Saratoga. The American general was at Stillwater, and had fortified Bemis' Heights, in the vicinity. On the 19th of September a battle commenced at three o'clock in the afternoon, and continued till night, when the Americans retired to their camp, and the British remained on the battle-field. Both armies claimed the victory.

1777. 14. On the 7th of October, General Burgoyne commenced an attack on the American lines. Colonel Morgan, with his riflemen, was sent to gain possession of the heights to the right of the enemy, while General Poor, with his brigade, attacked the left. In the midst of the action Arnold sallied forth, and, putting himself at the head of the troops of Learned's brigade, he attacked the Hessians in the centre, and broke their ranks with his repeated charges. The British then retreated to their intrenchments, which were desperately assailed by the Americans, with Arnold at their head. Arnold's horse was killed under him, and he was wounded in the leg and borne off the field, but not until the victory was complete. In this battle, General Frazer, of the British army, was mortally wounded, and died the following morning.

15. Burgoyne now endeavored to return to Fort Edward, but found the Americans had entirely cut off his retreat. He therefore sent a note under sanction of a flag to General Gates, asking for a cessation of hostilities until terms should be mutually agreed upon. The articles of capitulation were agreed upon and signed on the 17th of October, by which they were allowed a free passage to England, on condition of their not serving in America during the war. The whole number of the army surrendered amounted to five thousand seven hundred and fifty-two men. The Americans gained a fine train of artillery, seven thousand stand of arms, tents, and military stores.

16. Sir Henry Clinton had sent a detachment along the Hudson River to relieve General Burgoyne, but when they heard of his surrender they returned to New York. They captured some fortresses in the Highlands, burned Esopus, and plundered other villages, and behaved more like

1777. marauders, than a regular army sent for the relief of their harassed and suffering countrymen.

17. After the British had obtained possession of Philadelphia, Admiral Howe had brought round his ships from the Chesapeake into the Delaware Bay, and moved them up as far as the obstructions placed in the river would admit. It now became important to the welfare of the British army to remove these obstructions, and reduce the forts commanding the river. For this purpose General Howe sent a detachment to New Jersey. General Washington improved the opportunity to make an attack on the enemy at Germantown. Success at first waited on the Americans, but a party of the enemy threw themselves into a stone house, which they barricaded and made good against all attempts. Meanwhile the advantages at first gained were lost, and the Americans were compelled to retreat (October 4th).

18. Fort Mercer, at Red Bank, was assaulted on the 22d of October, by a body of Hessians under Count Donop. The fort was defended by Colonel Christopher Green. After a valiant defence the enemy were repulsed with great slaughter, and the Hessian commander mortally wounded. An attack made on Fort Mifflin, immediately opposite, by the enemy's shipping, was also unsuccessful. Finally, however, a large force sent out by Sir William Howe captured the two forts, and removed the obstructions in the Delaware (November 18th).

19. An attack was made (December 4th) on the camp at White Marsh, by General Howe, without success, and soon after, the American army, who were in a destitute condition, went into winter quarters at Valley Forge, on the Schuylkill.

Questions on the Events of 1777.—1. Who joined Washington at Trenton? By whom was he attacked? How were the two armies

posted? What did Washington do at midnight? What battle took place on the following morning? Who gained the battle? What general was killed?

2. What did Cornwallis now do? Where did Washington retire to winter quarters? The British?

3. Describe the expedition against Danbury. By whom were the British assailed in their retreat? What general was slain?

4. Describe Colonel Meigs's expedition.

5. Where did Washington encamp in May? Where did Sir William Howe establish his head-quarters? What did he do soon afterwards?

6. For what purpose did General Burgoyne leave Canada? What took place on his arrival at Ticonderoga? To what place did General St. Clair send his stores?

7. How was the flight revealed to the British? What was the result? When did the remaining troops reach Fort Edward? By whom was General Prescott captured? For whom exchanged?

8. When did Burgoyne reach Fort Edward? Where did General Schuyler take post? Who was besieging Fort Schuyler, and who was sent to its relief? Where did a battle take place, and with what result?

9. Who now went to the relief of the garrison? What was St. Leger obliged to do? What expedition was sent out by Burgoyne? What battle ensued? Who was killed in this battle? What battle took place subsequently?

10. Why did General Washington advance towards the Hudson? What did the British fleet do on the 28d of July? To what place did he now march? Where did the British fleet sail, and where did the army land? Where and when was a battle fought, and with what result? Where did the Americans retreat the next day? To what places did Congress retire?

11. What distinguished foreigners assisted the Americans at the battle of Brandywine?

12. When Washington's troops had rested, what did he do? What disaster happened to the troops under General Wayne? What did General Howe do? What general occupied Philadelphia with his troops?

13. Who succeeded General Schuyler? Where was Burgoyne?

Where the American general? What battle took place on the 19th of September? What is said of it?

14. Describe the battle of Saratoga. What general was mortally wounded?

15. What was Burgoyne now compelled to do? What were the terms of the capitulation? What number surrendered? What stores came into the possession of the Americans?

16. What was effected by the expedition sent to relieve Burgoyne?

17. To what river did Admiral Howe remove his ships? Describe the battle of Germantown.

18. By whom and when was Fort Mercer assaulted? By whom was it defended? What was the result? Who was mortally wounded? What other fort was attacked? Were the forts afterwards captured? Give the date.

19. Where were the Americans attacked by General Howe, December 4th? Where did the army retire to winter quarters?

EVENTS OF 1778.

1. Never was a greater contrast presented in the annals of war, than between the two contending armies. The British in elegant quarters in the city of Philadelphia, living in luxury, in ease, and the indulgence of licentious revelry; the Americans in log huts at Valley Forge, ill-clothed, worse fed, and suffering every privation. It required all Washington's influence to retain his army in camp, and to provide them with food.

2. Towards the latter end of February, Baron 1778. Steuben arrived in camp, and commenced training the army in the discipline and manœuvres of the battle-field. He was successful in his course of instruction, and from a mass of untrained militia, he raised up a disciplined

1778. army, fit to compete with the trained veterans of Europe. Provisions now arrived in plenty, clothing was furnished, and the spring commenced under favorable auspices for the camp at Valley Forge. Early in May, intelligence arrived that a treaty had been signed at Paris, by which the French government entered into an alliance with the United States.

3. The British government now offered terms of conciliation to the Americans, but, as they did not agree to the independence of the United States, they were as promptly rejected. Sir William Howe resigned his command, and Sir Henry Clinton, his successor, took command of the army in Philadelphia, on the 11th of May. Philadelphia was an unsafe position for the British army, since the alliance with France, and orders were given to withdraw the troops to New York. On the 18th of June, the whole British army evacuated the city, crossing the river Delaware in boats, and marching along its eastern bank.

4. Washington immediately broke up his camp at Valley Forge, and, making a considerable circuit, crossed the Delaware at Coryell's Ferry, the same place from which he had marched eighteen months before to attack the enemy at Trenton. On the morning of the 28th of June, an attack was made on the enemy at Monmouth Court House, now Freehold. General Lee led the van, and Washington came up to sustain him with the main army.

5. As Washington drew near the scene of action, he met Lee and the whole detachment in full retreat. He checked further retreat, reproved Lee for his conduct, and ordered him to lead his troops against the enemy. The battle was now resumed, and continued through the day. Washington intended to attack the enemy on the following morning, but at daybreak, when the army were roused for action, the

1778. enemy had disappeared, having withdrawn to Sandy Hook, whence they embarked for New York. The enemy lost three hundred killed and one hundred prisoners. The Americans seventy killed and one hundred and sixty wounded. Many died from the extreme heat of the weather, and the fatigue endured on the battle-field.

6. After Washington had rested his troops, he led them to White Plains. General Lee was charged before a court-martial with "disobedience of orders, misbehavior in making a disorderly retreat, and disrespect to the commander-in-chief." He was found guilty of the charges against him, and suspended from his command for one year. He never again returned to the service.

7. On the 8th of July a French fleet arrived off the coast, and anchored at the mouth of the Delaware. It consisted of twelve ships of the line and six frigates, and a land force of four thousand men under Count D'Estaing. A combination was entered into by the American and French commanders to recapture Rhode Island (that is, the island which gives name to the state), which the enemy had fortified, and made one of their strongholds. General Sullivan, with a detachment, landed on the island, and found the British works at its northern point abandoned. The French commander was about ordering out his boats to commence the attack on Newport, when a British fleet appeared in sight. The French immediately put out to sea to attack the enemy, but were prevented from doing so by a violent storm.

8. On the return to Newport, the shattered condition of the French fleet prevented its commander from assisting General Sullivan, who raised the siege, and retired in the night to the north part of the island. Here a skirmish ensued, when the British withdrew, and kept up a cannonade

1778. on the American works until night. The firing was renewed the following day, but at night General Sullivan withdrew his whole army from the island, unperceived by the enemy.

9. The war, as now carried on by the enemy, was a series of plunders and massacres. A detachment of cavalry was surprised in the night at Old Tappan, by General Grey, and bayoneted without mercy. A number, however, escaped, through the compassion of one of the British captains. An expedition against Little Egg Harbor demolished the public stores, and wantonly destroyed private property. An expedition, led by Tories and Indians, attacked the settlement at Wyoming, Pennsylvania, massacred the inhabitants, and laid waste their beautiful settlement. Another massacre took place at Cherry Valley, New York, by Tories and Indians, and Captain Ferguson surprised a portion of Pulaski's legion while sleeping, and wantonly butchered fifty on the spot.

10. An expedition was now sent from New York to invade Georgia, commanded by Colonel Campbell. He landed his troops near Savannah, on the 29th of December, where he was met by a small force under General Robert Howe, which was totally routed. The British then took possession of Savannah, with a quantity of cannon, military stores, and provisions. The army under General Washington now went into cantonments for the winter, the head-quarters being established near Middlebrook, New Jersey.

Questions on the Events of 1778.—2. Who arrived in camp, and what did he commence? What was the result? What treaty was signed at Paris?

3. What terms did the British government offer? Why were they rejected? When did the British evacuate Philadelphia?

4. What did Washington now do? What battle took place, and when?

5. Why did Washington reprove Lee, and what did he order? How long did the battle continue? To what place did the British withdraw?

6. After Washington had rested his troops, to what place did he withdraw? What charges were made against General Lee, and what was the sentence of the court?

7. When and where did a French fleet arrive? What town was besieged by General Sullivan? What prevented the French fleet from assisting him?

8. To what place did Sullivan withdraw his troops? What took place here?

9. What was the character of the war now carried on by the enemy?

10. Who commanded the expedition sent from New York to invade Georgia? When did he land? Who commanded the Americans? Of what did the British take possession? Where were the head-quarters of Washington's army during the winter?

EVENTS OF 1779.

1779. 1. After the battle which ended in the capture of Savannah, the American army retreated to South Carolina. General Prevost, with an army from Florida, took Sunbury, and marched to Savannah, where he assumed the command. Augusta was captured by Colonel Campbell, and by the middle of January the whole of Georgia was reduced to submission.

2. General Lincoln, an experienced officer, who had been appointed to the command of the army in the south, took command of his forces on the Savannah River, soon after the capture of Savannah, and waited for a favorable oppor-

1779. tunity to strike a blow in favor of the sinking cause.

In the mean time a company of tories, who were marching to the British camp, were met at Kettle Creek, and totally routed, after a desperate engagement, by a body of militia under Colonel Pickens. Colonel Boyd and about seventy of the tories were killed, and seventy-five taken prisoners, of whom five were hanged as traitors.

3. Early in March, General Lincoln sent General Ash, with two thousand men, against the British in Georgia. General Ash took post at Brier Creek, where he was surprised by General Prevost and put to flight, with a loss of nearly five hundred men. About the same time, Prevost sent a detachment against Port Royal, which was defeated by General Moultrie, with severe loss. General Lincoln now crossed with his army into Georgia, with the intention of attacking the British at Savannah, but learning that General Prevost was laying siege to Charleston, he hastened to the relief of that city. On the approach of Lincoln, the British general withdrew his troops to the island of St. John's, separated from the main land by Stono River. Lincoln attacked a division posted at Stono Ferry, but was repulsed. The British soon after established a post at Beaufort, on the island of Port Royal, and the main body retired to Savannah.

4. In May, Virginia became the scene of predatory warfare. Portsmouth and Norfolk were plundered, and a vast amount of public and private property wantonly destroyed. The infamous Tryon soon afterwards, with a band of mercenaries, laid waste the country in Connecticut adjoining the coast, robbing and ill-treating the defenceless inhabitants, and wantonly burning the towns of Fairfield and Norwalk.

5. The capture of Stony Point, on the Hudson, by General Wayne, was one of the most successful achievements of the

war. It was a strong fortress, and garrisoned by
1779. six hundred troops. On the 15th of July, Wayne arrived near the fort without being discovered. The assault was made at midnight by the troops, in two columns, who advanced with charged bayonets, overcame every obstacle, and captured the fort without firing a single gun. The garrison surrendered at discretion, after a brave but unavailing resistance. The fort was then dismantled and abandoned, the Americans securing the cannon and military stores.

6. Another daring exploit was achieved by Colonel Lee, in the surprise of the fort at Paulus Hook, on the Hudson, immediately opposite New York. Favored by the negligence of the garrison, they entered the fort in the silence of the night, and made themselves masters of the post before the garrison awakened from their slumbers. Lee immediately withdrew, with one hundred and fifty-nine prisoners. But few were killed, as there was little fighting, and no massacre.

7. Several expeditions were sent against the Indians, the most signal of which was that conducted by General Sullivan. He left the desolated region of Wyoming with his troops, and marched into the country of the Senécas. A battle took place at Newton (now Elmira) on the 29th of August, when the Indians and Tories were defeated, and the country laid waste to the Genesee River. General Sullivan having accomplished his object, returned with his troops to Easton. The thanks of Congress were voted to him and his gallant army.

8. During the summer the American commissioners at Paris fitted out a squadron, the command of which was given to Paul Jones, who captured a number of vessels in the North Sea. On the 23d of September, near Flam-

1779. borough Head, on the English coast, he encountered the British ships *Serapis*, of forty-four, and the *Countess of Scarborough*, of twenty guns. A severe and bloody battle ensued, which continued for three hours, when the *Serapis* struck her colors. The *Countess of Scarborough* was captured by the *Pallas*, and the prizes carried into Holland.

9. A formidable fleet under the command of Count D'Estaing now appeared on the coast of Georgia, and joined with General Lincoln in besieging the British at Savannah. On the 9th of October, Lincoln and D'Estaing advanced to storm the works. The assault was gallant, but unsuccessful; the assailants were repulsed, with a loss to the French of six hundred men, and the Americans four hundred. D'Estaing was wounded; Count Pulaski and the brave Sergeant Jasper were slain. The Americans now recrossed the river into South Carolina, and the French re-embarked.

10. In November, Washington's army went into winter quarters, one division under General Heath in the Highlands of the Hudson, for the protection of West Point and other posts. The head-quarters were established near Morristown, New Jersey.

Questions on the Events of 1779.—1. To what state did the army retire? What was captured by General Prevost? By Colonel Campbell?

2. Who took command of the army in the south? What battle took place? Who commanded the Americans in the battle of Kettle Creek?

3. What did Lincoln and Ash do in March? What took place at Brier Creek? At Port Royal? At Stono Ferry?

4. What towns in Virginia were plundered? Who laid waste the sea coast of Connecticut? What towns were burned?

5. Who captured Stony Point? Describe the assault and capture. What is said of the achievement?

6. What fort was taken by Colonel Lee? Describe the capture.
 7. Who marched against the Indians? When and where did a battle take place? How far was the country laid waste?
 8. When and where did a naval engagement take place? Who commanded the American squadron, and what British vessels were captured?
 9. Who commanded a French fleet on the coast of Georgia? With whom did he unite? When was Savannah assaulted? What was the result? Who are mentioned as among the wounded and slain?
 10. When and where did Washington's army go into winter quarters?
-

EVENTS OF 1780.

1780. 1. This year opened on distressed and almost famishing soldiers. The winter was one of unusual severity, and the army in the huts near Morristown suffered from want of blankets and clothing. They were also frequently without meat, often without bread, and sometimes without both. If it had not been for the kindness of the neighboring farmers, who furnished supplies, the army could not have subsisted.

2. Sir Henry Clinton now left New York with a large body of troops, in a fleet commanded by Admiral Arbuthnot, for the invasion of South Carolina. Early in April he commenced the siege of Charleston, which was defended by General Lincoln. He now sent out Colonel Webster to break up some posts occupied by the Americans. One of these posts, at Monk's Corner, was surprised and taken by Colonel Tarleton, who commanded Webster's advanced guard. This achievement shut off Charleston from all supplies (April 14th).

3. The siege of Charleston was continued with great

1780. vigor. Fort Moultrie surrendered, and General Lincoln, finding no relief, capitulated, and the city fell into the hands of the enemy (May 12th). A body of Americans, under command of Colonel Buford, was overtaken on the banks of the Waxhaw, by Colonel Tarleton, and, after being defeated, were butchered, after they had laid down their arms. Colonel Buford and some of his cavalry escaped. Having struck a blow which he supposed reduced the south to absolute submission, Sir Henry Clinton embarked with part of his forces for New York, leaving Cornwallis to carry the war into North Carolina, and then into Virginia (June 5th).

4. New Jersey was now invaded by a large body of troops under command of General Knyphausen, who landed at Elizabethtown Point. The American troops sent to oppose him made a stand at Springfield, where a severe engagement took place. The British outnumbered the Americans, but the latter being strongly posted, and reinforcements advancing, the British general retreated, and during the night passed over to Staten Island (June 23d).

5. Washington now moved with his army to the Highlands, and resumed his measures for the security of West Point. On the 10th of July, a large French fleet, with five thousand troops, arrived at Newport, in Rhode Island. It was intended to attack New York with the combined forces, but a fleet arrived from England which gave the superiority to the British arms, and the proposed attack was for the present abandoned.

6. In the south, though for a time no opposition was made to British rule, symptoms of revolt at length were manifested. Bold and determined leaders only were needed, and one was soon found in Colonel Sumter, who made several attacks on the enemy. The post at Hanging Rock was

1780. captured, and a body of British and Tories defeated (August 6th). The Baron de Kalb, at the head of the Maryland division, who had been detached to Carolina, made but slow progress, for want of supplies. On the 25th of July, General Gates, who had been appointed to command the southern army, arrived, and immediately marched towards Camden, South Carolina, and on the 13th of August encamped at Clermont, twelve miles distant.

7. On the approach of Gates, Lord Rawdon concentrated his forces at Camden, where he was joined by Cornwallis. On the evening of the 14th, General Gates moved with his main force to Sanders' Creek, seven miles from Camden. Here they encountered the British army, which had sallied out in the night to attack them at Clermont. A skirmish ensued, which lasted but a short time, when both armies halted, and waited for daylight, to renew hostilities. At daybreak (August 16th), the enemy advanced, and put the militia to flight. The regular troops stood their ground, and fought with great bravery, but were at length compelled to give way. Baron de Kalb, while exerting himself with the utmost to prevent the loss of this battle, fell, after receiving eleven wounds.

8. On the evening before the battle of Sanders' Creek, Colonel Sumter had made a successful attack on a post of the enemy on the Wateree, and captured one hundred prisoners and forty loaded wagons. Tarleton was sent against him, and coming to his camp at a time when his troops were resting from their fatigues, the Americans were surprised, and able to make but a feeble resistance. Between three and four hundred were killed and wounded, and all their arms and baggage fell into the hands of the enemy (August 18th).

9. We have now to narrate the most sorrowful event in

1780. the history of the Revolution—an event which brings up sad recollections both to British and Americans. It is the treason of Arnold, and the fate of André. We have recited the bravery, the enterprise, the military skill of the hero of Quebec, of Saratoga, and the brave warrior of many a battle-field. We must reverse the picture, and, instead of a patriot, behold a traitor.

10. After the evacuation of Philadelphia in 1778, Arnold was stationed in that city as military governor. Here he lived in an extravagant style, and, by his arrogance, raised up many enemies. He was charged before a court-martial with misconduct, fraud, and the granting certain privileges to disaffected persons. Though nothing fraudulent was proved against him, the transactions in which he was involved were pronounced “irregular, contrary to the articles of war, imprudent, and reprehensible;” and the court sentenced him to be reprimanded by the commander-in-chief.

11. The reprimand administered by Washington was one of delicacy and kindness, and ought to have sunk into his heart. But from the moment of his sentence by the court-martial, he seemed bent on vengeance. Dissembling his hatred to his country, he asked for the command at West Point, which was conferred upon him. His head-quarters were at Beverly,* on the eastern side of the river, and opposite to West Point. Here he carried on a secret correspondence with Major André, General Clinton’s aide-de-camp, under the assumed names of Gustavus and John Anderson, offering to betray West Point and the posts in the Highlands to Sir Henry Clinton.

12. In order to complete this nefarious business, it now became necessary for Arnold and André to hold a personal

* Commonly called the Robinson House.



INTERVIEW BETWEEN ARNOLD AND ANDRÉ.

1780. interview. André left New York, and went on board the *Vulture*, which lay at anchor in the Hudson. Here at midnight Arnold sent a boat to convey him to the west side of the river. Arnold was in waiting to receive him, and the conference lasted until near daybreak. As Arnold feared that sending the boat back to the ship might excite suspicion, he prevailed on André to remain on shore during the day.

13. The two conspirators now repaired to the house of Joshua Smith, a tory, who was aiding Arnold in his designs. Here the bargain for the betrayal of West Point was completed, and Arnold returned in his barge to head-quarters. He suggested to André a return by land, and furnished him with the following pass :

“Permit Mr. John Anderson to pass the guards to the White Plains, or below if he chooses; he being on public business by my direction.

“B. ARNOLD, Major-General.”

1780.

14. As Smith refused to put André on board the Vulture, he left his place of concealment about sunset, having exchanged his military coat for a citizen's, and crossed the river to King's Ferry, when he proceeded on horseback towards New York. He passed unmolested through the American lines by means of his passport, until he came near Tarrytown. Here he was stopped by three militia men armed with muskets. The first one who hailed him wore a refugee uniform, which led André to suppose he was among friends, and he declared at once that he was a British officer, on urgent business, and must not be detained a single moment. They then declared themselves to be Americans, and told André he was their prisoner.

15. They proceeded to search him, and found concealed papers in his boots, which satisfied them he was a spy. He offered his horse, watch, and one hundred guineas, if they would let him go. But they were patriots, refused all his offers, and led him as a prisoner to Colonel Jameson, at Northcastle. By request of André, Jameson wrote to Arnold that Anderson was a prisoner. Arnold was at breakfast when the letter arrived; the commander-in-chief was expected every moment, and the traitor would soon be exposed. Calling his wife aside, he told her that "he was a ruined man, and that he must fly for his life." Thus saying, he left the apartment, mounted a horse ready saddled, and fled to the river. Here throwing himself into his barge, he directed his men to row to the Vulture, which he entered as a traitor and renegade.

16. Major André was arraigned before a court-martial, tried as a spy, and being convicted, was hanged on the 2d of October. He was universally lamented, both by the British and Americans, and Sir Henry Clinton used every exertion to induce Washington to spare his life. But the

1780. stern usages of war, and the safety of the country, required the sacrifice. It was suggested to Sir Henry Clinton that André would be set at liberty if Arnold were given up. But the proposition was rejected, as incompatible with honor and military principle. The captors of André were John Paulding, Isaac Van Wart, and David Williams. Congress, by a formal vote, expressed a high sense of their virtuous and patriotic conduct; awarded to each of them a farm, a pension for life of two hundred dollars, and a silver medal, bearing on one side a shield, with the word Fidelity, and on the other the motto *Vincit amor Patriæ*. These medals were presented to them by General Washington at his head-quarters.

17. In the south Cornwallis had established a military despotism, and used the most oppressive measures to coerce the people to submit to royal authority. But these violent measures failed of their object, for the people only waited for a favorable opportunity to assert their freedom. Colonel Ferguson, who had been sent with a body of troops, principally Tories, to sweep the country, was attacked by a body of hardy mountaineers and backwoodsmen on King's Mountain, where he had made a stand. The assailants ascended the mountain in three divisions, and were at first driven back by the fixed bayonets of the enemy, who in turn were attacked by the Americans on every side. At last Colonel Ferguson was killed, and the enemy surrendered, with a loss of three hundred killed and wounded, and eight hundred prisoners (October 7th).

18. General Marion, a partisan leader, annoyed the British outposts, and manœuvred so skilfully that he avoided the strong parties of the enemy sent in pursuit of him. On the 12th of October, Major Wemyss made an attack on Sumter at Broad River, but the British were defeated, and

1780. their commander taken prisoner. Tarleton was now sent in pursuit of Sumter, and overtook him on the 20th of November at Blackstock, on the Tyger River. A battle ensued, but the British sustained a severe loss, and retired, leaving the Americans victors on the field. General Sumter was severely wounded in this battle.

19. After General Gates had been defeated, he retired with the remains of his army to Charlotte, North Carolina, where he was soon after informed by official despatches that General Greene would supersede him in command. General Greene arrived in camp on the 2d of December, and made preparations for strengthening his army, introducing discipline, and obtaining needful supplies, but no encounter took place with the enemy until January. In the latter part of this year, Great Britain declared war against Holland, for the encouragement that nation had given to American privateers. War had previously been declared against France and Spain.

Questions on the Events of 1780.—1. What is said of the winter, and from what causes did the soldiers suffer?

2. Who invaded South Carolina? When was Charleston besieged? By whom was it defended? What American post was taken, and what did its capture effect?

3. What fort surrendered? What was General Lincoln compelled to do? What is said of Colonel Buford's detachment? Whom did Sir Henry Clinton leave in South Carolina?

4. By whom was New Jersey invaded? Where did an engagement take place? Give the result.

5. To what place did Washington remove? What arrived at Newport?

6. Who made attacks on the enemy in the south? What is said of the Baron de Kalb? General Gates?

7. What was done by Lord Rawdon? To what place did

General Gates move his army? When did the battle take place? Describe the battle. What is said of De Kalb?

8. What was done by Colonel Sumter? Who was sent against him? Give the result.

9. What is the most sorrowful event in the Revolution? What is said of Arnold?

10. What office did Arnold hold in 1778? What charges were made against him? What decision was given by the court-martial, and what sentence?

11. What effect was produced on Arnold? What command was conferred upon him? With whom did he carry on a correspondence? What assumed names were used by the parties?

12. What became necessary on behalf of the conspirators? What did André do? Arnold? Where was the conference held?

13. Relate the incidents of the following day. What was required by the pass? By whom was it signed?

14. What did André now do? By whom was he stopped? Why did he suppose his captors to belong to the British?

15. What was found in his boots? To whom and where did they take him? What did he write to Arnold? What did Arnold do on receipt of the letter?

16. What became of André? What were the names of his captors? What did Congress express by their vote? What was awarded to them?

17. What had Cornwallis established? Describe the battle of King's Mountain. Who was killed, and how many were prisoners?

18. What is said of General Marion? Major Wemyss? Describe the battle of Blackstock.

19. Where did General Gates retire? By whom was he superseded? Against what nation did Great Britain declare war? With what other nations was she at war previously?

EVENTS OF 1781, AND CLOSE OF THE REVOLUTION.

1781.

1.. The new year was ushered in with a painful event. On the 1st of January, the Pennsylvania line stationed at Morristown turned out under arms, refused obedience to orders, and declared their intention to march to Philadelphia, and demand redress of grievances from Congress. When they had marched as far as Princeton, a committee from Congress met them, and induced them to agree to a compromise, by which their wants were relieved, and provision made for their being paid in full.

2. A large body of troops had been sent by Sir Henry Clinton to invade Virginia, and Benedict Arnold, now a brigadier-general in the British service, was appointed to the command. He landed on the James River, twenty-five miles from Richmond, on the 4th of January, and, on the following day, marched into the capital, after a feeble opposition. Here he destroyed the public edifices, stores, and workshops, and private property to a large amount. He then went down the river, and then to Portsmouth, where he took post on the 20th of January.

3. General Greene, who now had command of the southern army, was encamped at Charlotte, North Carolina. He sent General Morgan, with a division one thousand strong, to take post near the Broad River, in the western part of South Carolina. Tarleton was sent against him with a force of eleven hundred men. He came up with Morgan at a place known as the Cowpens. The attack was made by Tarleton (January 17th). In the commencement of the battle, some of Morgan's troops gave way, but they soon rallied and attacked the enemy with such fury, that they were completely

1781. routed, and a general flight took place. The loss of the British in this battle was ten officers and one hundred men killed, and five hundred prisoners, while the loss of the Americans was twelve killed and sixty wounded.

4. Morgan did not remain long on the battle-field. The same day at noon he set out with his prisoners and spoils. Before night set in he crossed the Broad River, and early the next morning he started for the Catawba. As soon as Cornwallis heard of the defeat of Tarleton, he sent out part of his force in pursuit, while he followed with the main army and baggage (January 19th). But finding the latter impeded his march, he destroyed all the baggage and stores that could be spared, and continued his pursuit. Morgan succeeded in crossing the Catawba two hours before the enemy arrived on its banks. A heavy rain fell through the night, and the river was so swollen as to be impassable (January 29th).

5. Two days after, General Greene arrived, took the command, and continued the retreat. As soon as the waters subsided, Cornwallis with his army crossed the Catawba, though his passage was contested by the Carolina militia. These, however, were dispersed by the British, and their commander, General Davidson, was killed (February 1st). The Americans now crossed the river Yadkin, but lost some wagons which were taken by the van of the British army. That night the rain poured down in torrents, and the river was unfordable.

6. General Greene now pressed forward for the river Dan, and Lord Cornwallis pursued with the hope of intercepting him before he could cross that river. But General Greene had secured boats to ferry his troops across, which he accomplished successfully, thus placing a deep river

1781. between himself and his pursuers. The British were much vexed to find "that all their toil and exertions had been vain, and that all their hopes were frustrated."*

7. The pursuit of the British ended at the Dan River, and Lord Cornwallis, after a day's rest, marched off with his army, and, on the 20th, took post at Hillsborough. General Greene soon after recrossed the Dan River, and after several skirmishes with his light troops and the enemy's foraging parties, he reached Guilford Court House (March 15th), and the same day was attacked by Cornwallis. The enemy advanced in three columns. In the early part of the battle the North Carolina militia took to flight, and although there was intrepid fighting in different parts of the field, it became evident to General Greene that the day was lost; and he therefore directed a retreat, which was made in good order.

8. Soon after the battle Cornwallis retreated towards Wilmington, North Carolina, closely pursued by General Greene, who, being unable to overtake him, changed his course, and marched into South Carolina. Cornwallis now marched with his army to Wilmington, and, after a short delay, set out to Virginia (April 25th). In the mean time General Greene arrived at Hobkirk's Hill, two miles from Lord Rawdon's post at Camden. Here a hard-fought battle took place on the 25th of April, but through a false move of a portion of the troops, Greene was obliged to retreat.

9. In the mean time Colonel Lee and General Marion captured Fort Watson and Fort Motte. Colonel Lee captured Fort Granby, and marched to the aid of Colonel Pickens in the siege of Augusta, while General Greene

* Annual Register, 1781.

1781. commenced the siege of the strong fortress of Ninety-Six. Hearing of the approach of Lord Rawdon, he made an assault on the fort (June 18th). After a severe contest the stockaded fort was taken, but the troops were repulsed from the main works.

10. We left Arnold at Portsmouth with his forces, where he had taken post in January. In March, General Phillips was sent to Virginia, with an army of two thousand five hundred men. He joined Arnold, and took the chief command. He then ravaged the country, took Petersburg, and proceeded towards Richmond, but found that General La Fayette was there with a strong force. After burning the stores, and destroying property at Manchester, they returned to Petersburg. Here General Phillips died, and the command again devolved on Arnold. Lord Cornwallis arrived on the 20th of May, and took command of the army.

11. The first object of Lord Cornwallis was to strike a blow at General La Fayette, who was then at Richmond, where he was waiting for the arrival of General Wayne. On his approach to Richmond, La Fayette left that place, and retreated until he was joined by General Wayne and nine hundred soldiers of the Pennsylvania line. He now pursued Cornwallis, who retreated to Williamsburg, and soon after to Portsmouth. But not liking Portsmouth, he embarked with his army, and sailed for Yorktown, which he fortified Gloucester Point, on the opposite side of the York River, had likewise been fortified (August 22d).

12. It was now Washington's intention to attack the British in New York, in which enterprise he was to be assisted by the French troops. But receiving despatches from Count de Grasse that he should leave St. Domingo with a large fleet, and a considerable body of land forces,

1781. and steer for the Chesapeake, he determined to move to Virginia, and postpone his attack on New York. The whole of the French army near New York, and about two thousand of the American, under command of General Washington, assisted by Count de Rochambeau, now marched up the Hudson River, crossed at King's Ferry, and marched down through New Jersey, thence crossed the Delaware on their way to Virginia.

18. Clinton was not aware of the destination of the allied troops till they had crossed the Delaware. As a sort of counterplot, therefore, he sent Arnold on an expedition to Connecticut. On the 6th of September the latter appeared off the harbor of New London, and landed his troops in two divisions. He met with little opposition, but a detachment sent against Fort Griswold, on the opposite side of the river, sustained a severe contest. At last the garrison was overpowered by the enemy, and cruelly massacred, after they had thrown down their arms. Arnold now entered New London and set fire to the stores, which communicating to the dwellings, the whole place was wrapped in flames. He now retreated to his boats, and was pursued by the exasperated countrymen, whose vengeance he escaped, although several of his men were wounded. This expedition ended Arnold's infamous career in his native land, and thenceforth he appears no more in the annals of history (September 6th).

14. General Greene, who had been encamped for weeks during the heats of July and August, on the high hills of the Santee, broke up his encampment on the 22d of August to march against Colonel Stuart. He encountered the enemy on the 8th of September at Eutaw Springs. A desperate battle ensued, lasting near four hours, when the enemy were completely routed, and a large number of

1781. prisoners taken by the Americans. After the battle appeared, however, to be decided, a number of the enemy opened a destructive fire from a brick house forming part of their encampment. General Greene, finding his ammunition nearly exhausted, gave up the attempt to dislodge the enemy, who retired in the night, and marched to Monk's Corner, twenty-five miles from Charleston.

15. Lord Cornwallis, who had fortified Yorktown and Gloucester Point, deemed himself perfectly secure against all attacks of the Americans. He was aroused from his fancied security by the appearance of the fleet of Count de Grasse at the mouth of York River, and the landing of a French army. Count de Barras, with a large reinforcement, arrived soon after, and though Admiral Graves with a British fleet had attacked the French ships, he was unable to prevent their obtaining full command of the Chesapeake.

16. Washington reached Williamsburg, September 14th, and by the 25th the American and French troops had arrived and encamped near that town. The allied armies soon after marched for Yorktown, and by the 1st of October completely invested the place. They then threw up a parallel line of fortifications, which was completed on the 9th, when the batteries poured in a destructive fire upon the town. On the night of the 11th a second parallel was opened within three hundred yards of the works. The British kept up an incessant fire, and as two redoubts of the enemy particularly annoyed the besiegers, it was resolved to capture them. This was effected by a party of Americans storming one, and a detachment of French the other. Cornwallis was now reduced to great distress, and, as his post was no longer tenable, he attempted to escape by means of boats across the river. Part of his army succeeded in crossing, but a storm scattered the boats with the

1781. second detachment, and obliged him to relinquish his design. His hopes were now at an end, and on the 17th he sent a flag to General Washington, proposing a cessation of hostilities. This was acceded to, and commissioners appointed to arrange the terms of capitulation. These were signed on the 19th of October, when the posts of Yorktown and Gloucester were surrendered to General Washington, and the ships of war to the Count de Grasse. On the very day of the surrender of Cornwallis, Sir Henry Clinton left New York with a large fleet and army for his relief, and arrived off the capes on the 24th, when, finding that Yorktown had fallen, he returned to New York.

17. The rejoicings in the victorious camp extended throughout the Union. *"Cornwallis is taken!" was uttered in tones of gladness, for "it was considered a death-blow to the war." The power of the British was now limited to the cities of New York, Savannah, and Charleston; and though peace was not concluded between the two countries for more than a year after the surrender of Yorktown, hostilities ceased between the two armies, with the exception of some skirmishes in South Carolina and Georgia, which will be adverted to in due order. The French army remained during the winter in Virginia, and the Count de Rochambeau established his head-quarters at Williamsburg, while the American army moved to the north of New Jersey and the Hudson River. Washington passed the winter in Philadelphia.

1782. 18. In April, General Washington rejoined the army encamped at Newburg. The British army continued to occupy New York, but no active operations took place between the opposing forces. Sir Guy Carleton

* Irving's Life of Washington, Vol. IV., p. 386

1782. arrived in May, and took command of the British army, Sir Henry Clinton having been recalled at his own request. After the surrender of Cornwallis, the southern army had been reinforced by the Pennsylvania line. General Greene had sent Wayne into Georgia. Colonel Browne from Savannah marched against him, but the American commander attacked him at midnight, and routed his whole party. Wayne was afterwards attacked by a large body of Creek Indians, led by their chiefs and British officers, but he defeated them. This was the last battle in Georgia.

19. A change now took place in the British ministry, and soon after, overtures of peace being made, commissioners were appointed by both governments to settle the terms. John Adams, John Jay, Benjamin Franklin, and Henry Laurens, were the agents who represented the United States. A general treaty of peace was signed at Paris on

the 20th of January, and on the 19th of April the joyful intelligence was proclaimed in the American army. This was the anniversary of the battle of Lexington, and the end of the eight years of warfare, and blood, and armed hosts contending for the mastery.

20. On the 3d of November the army was disbanded, the cities occupied by British troops evacuated: Savannah in July, New York in November, and Charleston in December. As the service of the men engaged for the time of the war would not terminate until the ratification of the definitive articles of peace, it was deemed advisable to grant furloughs to such of the men as the commander thought proper. This enabled the army to be disbanded by degrees, and prevented the danger of letting loose in large masses a body of unpaid soldiers. Arrangements having been made with General Carleton for the evacuation of New York by

1783. the British troops on the 25th of November, General Washington with his troops, accompanied by Governor Clinton and other state officers, entered the city in triumphal procession, as soon as the British troops embarked.

21. On the 4th of December, Washington took a final leave of his companions in arms. He then repaired to Annapolis, where Congress was in session, and, on the 23d of December, resigned his commission as commander-in-chief of the continental armies. * "He then hastened to Mount Vernon to enjoy the pleasures of domestic life, with the pleasing reflection that his beloved country was free and independent, and had taken her position among the nations of the earth."

Questions on the Events of 1781, and Close of the Revolution.—

1. What painful event occurred on the 1st of January? How was the difficulty settled?

2. By whom was Virginia invaded? What city did he capture, and what did he destroy? Where did he take post?

3. Whom did General Greene send out, and for what purpose? Who was sent against him? Describe the battle of Cowpens.

4. What did Morgan do after the battle? Describe the pursuit. What rivers were forded?

5. What did General Greene now do? Cornwallis? What river did the Americans ford, and what occurred after their crossing?

6. What river was now crossed by the Americans, and what ended Cornwallis's pursuit?

7. Where did Cornwallis take post? What did General Greene do? Describe the battle of Guilford Court House.

8. What did Cornwallis do after the battle? General Greene? Describe the battle of Hobkirk's Hill.* Who were the respective commanders?

9. What forts were captured?

* Lossing's Seventeen Hundred and Seventy-Six, p. 359.

10. Who took command of the British forces in Virginia? What towns were captured? What is said of General La Fayette? What is said of Generals Phillips, Arnold, and Cornwallis?

11. What was the first object of Lord Cornwallis? What did General La Fayette do? What town did Cornwallis fortify?

12. Why did Washington determine to move with his army to Virginia, instead of attacking New York? With what forces did he march, and by whom was he assisted? Describe the route taken.

13. What did Clinton do as a counterplot? Where did Arnold land, and what did he do? What is said of the capture of Fort Griswold? What is said of New London? What is now said of Arnold?

14. Where was General Greene during July and August? Describe the battle of Eutaw Springs. To what place did General Greene march that night?

15. What roused Lord Cornwallis from his fancied security? Who arrived soon after?

16. What was done by the 1st of October? On the 9th? What took place on the night of the 11th? How did Cornwallis attempt to escape? After his failure in this attempt, what did he propose? When did the surrender take place, and to whom?

17. To what cities was the British power limited? Where did Washington spend the winter?

18. Where was the army encamped in April? Who took command of the British army in New York? What two battles took place in Georgia?

19. Who were appointed by the American government to make terms of peace? When and where was a general treaty signed? When was peace proclaimed in the American army?

20. When was the army disbanded? When were the cities occupied by the British evacuated? When did General Washington occupy New York?

21. What did General Washington do on the 4th of December? On the 23d? Where was Congress in session? What did Washington then do?

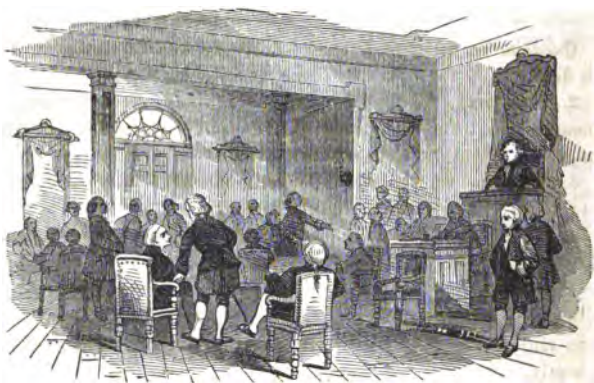
THE CONFEDERATION.

1784. 1. The war having happily terminated, a treaty of peace being signed, and the independence of the United States acknowledged, it might be supposed that prosperity and happiness would wait on a people delivered from oppressive rulers, and the cares, anxieties, and horrors of war. But such was not the case. At the close of the war, Congress, as the representative of the nation, was burdened with an immense foreign debt. It had no means of discharging that or its domestic debts; and the soldiers who had fought the battles and endured every hardship of war were unpaid. The Articles of Confederation gave Congress no power to create a public revenue; and could only recommend to the states the levying of taxes to pay the debts which had been contracted.

2. General bankruptcy prevailed, there was no commerce, and Congress had no authority to make commercial treaties.

1786. Insurrections broke out among the people. In Massachusetts a large number of discontented citizens, headed by Daniel Shay, who had been a captain in the Continental army, marched against Worcester, and threatened to compel the General Assembly to repeal the taxes. General Lincoln, with a large body of militia, was sent against them; three were killed, and fourteen of the prisoners were found guilty of high treason, but afterwards pardoned. On the 11th of September commissioners from five states met at Annapolis "to consider the best means of

remedying the defects of the federal government." The result of their deliberations was transmitted to Congress, which body recommended to the several states the appointment of delegates to meet in convention at Philadelphia "for the sole and express purpose of revising the Articles of Confederation, and reporting to Congress such alterations and provisions as should render the federal constitution adequate to the wants of the nation."



THE FEDERAL CONVENTION.

1787. 3. The delegates from the different states met in Philadelphia in May, and General Washington was chosen president of the convention. All the states were represented except Rhode Island. On the 17th of September the convention having agreed upon the several articles of the Constitution, it was adopted, and signed by all the members present. The Constitution thus formed was sent to Congress, who forwarded it to the several state legislatures for their consideration and approval.

1788. 4. *The Constitution having been ratified by a sufficient number of states, an act was passed by Congress, on the 13th of September, appointing the first Wednesday in January, 1789, for the people of the United States to choose electors of a President, and the first Wednesday in February for the electors to meet and make a choice. The first Wednesday in March was named for the meeting of government in the city of New York, being the place where the present Congress was then in session.

Questions on the Confederation.—1. What was Congress unable to do?

2. What was the condition of the country? Describe Shay's insurrection. For what purpose did commissioners meet at Annapolis? What did Congress recommend?

3. When and where was the Convention held? Who was chosen to preside? When was it adopted and signed?

4. When was it approved by Congress? What day was named for the meeting of the new government?

* The Constitution was ratified in all the states but North Carolina and Rhode Island. It was adopted by both states subsequently.

THE FEDERAL CONSTITUTION.

WASHINGTON'S ADMINISTRATION.

1789. 1. The members of both Houses of Congress assembled in New York at the appointed time, but in consequence of a delay in forming a quorum the votes of the Electoral College were not counted till April, when they were found to be unanimous in favor of Washington. On the 16th of April, having been officially notified of his election, he set out from Mount Vernon for the seat of government. His journey was a continued ovation. He was hailed by all classes of people as their deliverer, and every town and city through which he passed poured forth its thousands to bid him welcome.

2. At Trenton a triumphal arch was erected on the bridge across that stream where, twelve years before, he had been attacked by Cornwallis whom he baffled by his retreat at midnight. It bore the inscription:—"December 26th, 1776. The defender of the mothers will be the protector of the daughters." As he passed under the arch a number of young ladies, dressed in white, strewed flowers in his path, and sang an ode descriptive of their veneration and gratitude.

3. The time of the President's inauguration was named for the 30th of April, when the oath of office was administered by Mr. Livingston, chancellor of the state of New York, in the presence of an immense multitude. He then retired to the Senate chamber, and addressed both houses

1789. with an impressive speech. John Adams was elected Vice-President, and the heads of department, and judges were appointed. Thomas Jefferson was appointed Secretary of State, Alexander Hamilton Secretary of the Treasury, Henry Knox Secretary of War, Edmund Randolph Attorney-General, and John Jay Chief Justice. The organization of the new government occupied the attention of Congress during its first session, which closed on the 29th of September, by adjournment to the first Monday in January.

4. During the recess the President set out on a journey through the Eastern States, accompanied by his secretaries, Major Jackson, and Mr. Lear. Wherever he came "the benedictions of the people" were poured forth, and all classes hailed him as the Father of his country, and testified in every possible way their respect and affection. He continued his journey as far as Portsmouth, New Hampshire, returning to New York on the 13th of November.

1790. 5. Congress reassembled on the 8th of January, when the session was opened by an address from the President, delivered to the members of both houses in the Senate chamber. He recommended that provision should be made for national defence, for intercourse with foreign nations, for the support of public credit, and suggested the adoption of many useful laws. Mr. Hamilton, Secretary of the Treasury, had been directed by Congress to present a plan for retrieving the public credit. The public debt of the United States was fifty-four millions of dollars, besides twenty-five millions which had been contracted by the states individually. About twelve millions were due to France, Spain, and Holland. Mr. Hamilton recommended that the entire mass of debt should be funded, the Union made responsible for it, and taxes imposed for its liqui-

¹⁷⁹⁰ dation. The assumption of the state debts met with much opposition in Congress, and led to warm discussions, though it was finally adopted. For the purpose of establishing a revenue, duties were levied on imported merchandise, and taxes on the tonnage of vessels. The establishment of a permanent seat of government, which had been a subject of violent contest, was now settled by compromise. It was agreed that Congress should continue for ten years to hold its sessions in Philadelphia, during which time the public buildings should be erected at some place on the Potomac. A territory ten miles square was ceded by the states of Maryland and Virginia for this purpose, afterwards called the District of Columbia.

6. During this year frequent depredations were made by the Indians from the north-west side of the Ohio River on our frontier settlements. On the 30th of September an expedition under command of General Harmer set out from Fort Washington (now Cincinnati). He destroyed the principal villages of the Miamis, but his troops were betrayed into an ambush, and routed with great slaughter. Another engagement took place on the 21st of October, when the Americans were compelled to retreat, leaving the dead and wounded in the hands of the enemy.

7. Congress met on the first Monday of December in Philadelphia, which now became the seat of government. The Secretary of the Treasury recommended an increase of the impost on foreign distilled spirits, and a tax on spirits distilled at home, which became a law. A

^{1791.} bill was also introduced for the establishment of a national bank, which met with much opposition, but it was finally passed by both houses and approved by the President. During this session of Congress Vermont was admitted into the Union as an independent state. This

1791. state was first settled at Fort Dummer (now Brattleborough) in 1725. The territory was claimed both by New York and New Hampshire, and the possession warmly contested. But the people of Vermont declared their independence, and refused to acknowledge either of the claimants. New York relinquished all claim on the payment of \$30,000.

8. Another expedition had been fitted out against the Indians. General St. Clair, the commander, set out with about 1400 men from Fort Washington, and, on the 3d of November, encamped near the Miami villages. The next morning, half an hour before sunrise, the Indians made a sudden attack on the camp. A severe contest followed, lasting for two hours and a half, when the general was compelled to order a retreat. In this disastrous battle the Americans lost nearly nine hundred in killed and wounded.

1792. 9. In August, 1792, Kentucky became one of the states of the Union. The first settlement was made at Boonesborough, in 1775, by Colonel Daniel Boone and a small party of the hardy sons of the wilderness. Washington wished to retire from the presidential office at the termination of the four years for which he was elected, but the wishes of friends and the people prevailed on him to remain. He was elected for a second term by a unanimous vote, and John Adams was re-elected Vice-President.

1793. 10. Washington's second term of office commenced at an unfavorable period. The Revolution in France had overthrown monarchy and beheaded the king, and the existing government had now declared war against England. Many persons wished to render assistance to France and enable that country to establish a republic. But the President, having consulted his cabinet council, issued his proclamation, "forbidding the citizens of the

1793. United States taking any part in the hostilities on the seas, or supplying either party with contraband articles."

11. The French republic had appointed citizen Genet minister to the United States. He landed at Charleston, South Carolina, and was received with great rejoicing. Though aware of the proclamation of neutrality, he authorized the fitting out of privateers to cruise against the vessels of a nation with which the United States were at peace. Though notified by the government of his violation of the neutrality laws, he persevered in his improper course until recalled by his government. On the last day of this year Mr. Jefferson resigned his office of Secretary of State, and was succeeded by Mr. Edmund Randolph.

1794. 12. Great excitement was now produced in the United States by the acts of the British ministry. One of these acts directed English cruisers to detain all vessels bound to France with cargoes of corn, flour, or meal, and take them into port. Another act authorized the seizure of vessels laden with the produce of any French colony, or carrying supplies to such colony. In consequence of these acts many American vessels were captured. Preparatory measures to an expected war were made by Congress, and an embargo was laid for thirty days on all foreign trade. The British ministry, however, soon after revoked these offensive measures, and Mr. John Jay was sent as a special envoy to adjust existing difficulties.

13. General Wayne carried on a successful campaign against the hostile Indians west of the Ohio. After all overtures for peace were ineffectual, he advanced against the enemy, and in a battle (August 20th) on the banks of the Maumee River he gained a complete and decisive vic-

1794. tory. Their towns were destroyed and the products of their fields laid waste.

14. In the western part of Pennsylvania great opposition had been made to the excise law, or tax on spirituous liquors. Armed men combined to resist the execution of the law, and the officers appointed to enforce it were assailed and compelled to fly. The President issued his proclamation, warning the insurgents to desist, and declared his fixed purpose to reduce the refractory to obedience. As they persisted in their rebellion, fifteen thousand men, under command of General Lee, then governor of Virginia, were sent against them. To this overwhelming force the insurgents made no opposition. They laid down their arms and gave assurance of submission to the government. Thus the "Whiskey Insurrection" was suppressed without bloodshed.

1795. 15. Mr. Jay's treaty with Great Britain was now received and laid before the Senate. It provided for the evacuation of western posts held by the British, made provision for compensation for vessels illegally captured, secured to British creditors the means of collecting debts due before the treaty of peace, and authorized a restricted commerce between the United States and British West India islands. It was violently opposed by many persons, but approved by the President and ratified by the Senate.

16. General Wayne, who had brought the war to a successful termination with the Indians north-west of the Ohio, now concluded a treaty with them, which was soon after ratified. A treaty was made with Spain, which secured to the Americans the free navigation of the Mississippi River; and during the year a treaty was made with the Dey and

regency of Algiers, which liberated many American citizens from a long and grievous captivity.

1796. 17. On the 1st of January the French minister,

Mr. Adet, presented the colors of France, with an address, which was replied to by the President. But though these friendly manifestations were made at the commencement of the year, bitter feelings were soon after exhibited by the French Republic, in consequence of which it was deemed expedient to recall Mr. Monroe, and send Charles C. Pinckney, with instructions to explain the policy of the United States to the French government, and express their wish to maintain amicable relations.

18. During this year Tennessee was admitted as a state into the Union. The first settlement was made in 1757, at Fort Loudon, by emigrants from North Carolina. In 1790 it was ceded by the latter state to the general government, and organized into the "Territory south-west of the Ohio."

19. The time for the presidential election being at hand, great anxiety began to be felt whether Washington would consent to stand for a third term. This question was soon put at rest by the publication of his "Farewell Address," in which he announced his intention of retiring from the cares and responsibilities of office. This Address was published in September in the "Philadelphia Daily Advertiser," and produced a great sensation throughout the country. Numerous testimonials were sent in by State Legislatures and other public bodies, expressing the greatest respect for the President, and regret at his intended retirement.

1797. 20. In February the votes at the recent election

were opened and counted in Congress, when John Adams, having the greatest number, was declared President, and Thomas Jefferson, having the next number, Vice-President for four years, their term of office to commence on

1797. the 4th of March next ensuing. Washington's term of office ended on the 3d of March, when, having remained until the inauguration of his successor, he set out for Mount Vernon, that peaceful abode to which he had so often turned a wishful eye amidst the cares and anxieties of his public life, and where he hoped to pass the rest of his days in quiet and serenity.

Questions on Washington's Administration.—1. What is said of President Washington's journey to the seat of government?

2. Give an account of his reception at Trenton.

3. When did the President take the oath of office? Who was elected Vice-President?

4. What did the President do in the recess? How far did he extend his journey?

5. What did the President recommend? What debts were due by the national government? By individual states? What measures were adopted for payment? What was done to establish a revenue? What measure was adopted respecting the seat of government? By what states was a territory ceded? What was it called?

6. Describe General Harmer's expedition against the Indians.

7. When and where did Congress now meet? What acts were passed? When was Vermont admitted into the Union? When was this state first settled?

8. Describe General St. Clair's expedition against the Indians.

9. When was Kentucky admitted as a state? When, where, and by whom was the first settlement made? What is said of Washington? Mr. Adams?

10. What proclamation was issued by the President?

11. Who was sent as minister from France to the United States? How did he violate the neutrality laws?

12. What acts were passed by the British government injurious to American commerce? What act was passed by Congress in consequence? Who was sent to adjust difficulties?

13. Describe General Wayne's campaign against the Indians?

14. What law was resisted in Pennsylvania? What did the President do? Who was sent against the insurgents?

15. What were the provisions of Jay's treaty? Was it approved?

16. What other treaties were made? Give their stipulations?

17. What was done by the French minister on the 1st of January? For what purpose was Mr. Pinckney sent to France?

18. When was Tennessee admitted into the Union? When and by whom was the first settlement made? By whom was it ceded to the general government, and what was it called?

19. What did President Washington publish? What effect was produced by his Farewell Address?

20. Who were elected President and Vice-President? What day did they enter on their duties? Relate what is said of Washington.

JOHN ADAMS' ADMINISTRATION.

1797. 1. Soon after Mr. Adams became President, he issued a proclamation for a special meeting of Congress, in consequence of the threatening aspect of affairs in France. Mr. Pinckney, who succeeded Mr. Monroe as minister to that country, was treated with studied neglect and insult, and ordered to leave the country, the French government refusing to receive or acknowledge him as the envoy of the United States. The French cruisers captured a large number of American merchant vessels, and confiscated their cargoes. Congress assembled on the 15th of May, and adopted measures to maintain the honor of the nation, by resisting the encroachments of France.

2. In pursuance of the policy recommended by the President, of effecting an amicable adjustment of differences by negotiation, three envoys extraordinary were appointed to the French Republic, namely, Charles Cotesworth Pinck-

1797. ney, John Marshall, and Elbridge Gerry. The new envoys met in Paris (October 4th), and sent notice of their arrival to the government. A secret agent waited on them, and intimated that a loan of money to the Republic, and a present to the French Directory, would open the way to a negotiation. "We will not give you one cent," was the spirited reply of the American envoys.

1798. 3. Government now resolved on vigorous measures, and Congress authorized the President to enlist ten thousand men as a provisional army, to be called into service in case of hostilities. Washington was appointed commander-in-chief. An act was also passed, authorizing the commanders of public armed vessels, and granting commissions to private vessels, to capture French armed vessels.

1799. 4. In consequence of the latter-named act, a number of French armed vessels were captured. The French frigate *L'Insurgente* was taken by the *Constellation*, Commodore Truxtun, after a sharp action, lasting an hour and a quarter. The prize was manned and sent to the United States. The President, having received an intimation that the French government were willing to negotiate, appointed three envoys, who were confirmed by the Senate, and soon after proceeded to France. The envoys appointed were Messrs. William V. Murray, W. R. Davie, and Oliver Ellsworth.

5. But all public affairs were now lost sight of and absorbed by a domestic calamity, which filled every heart with the deepest sorrow. This was the news of the death of that best of men and most unselfish of patriots, George Washington. He died on the 14th of December, after one day's illness, brought on by exposure to a cold rain while riding over his estate. Congress adopted suitable testimonials of

1799. profound respect for his memory, and appointed a committee to devise the most suitable manner of doing honor to the memory of the man "first in war, first in peace, and first in the hearts of his countrymen."

1800. 6. As there now appeared some prospect of a favorable adjustment of difficulties with France, warlike preparations by land were abandoned, though commercial intercourse still continued, as well as the arming of merchant vessels. Commodore Truxtun, while cruising off Guadaloupe, discovered a large vessel, to which he gave chase. It was the French frigate *La Vengeance*, of fifty guns, which was overtaken by the *Constellation*, and a running fire kept up for several hours. The French vessel was silenced, but before Truxtun could take possession of his prize, she managed to escape in the darkness of the night, with a hundred and fifty men killed or wounded (February 1st).

7. The removal of the seat of government from Philadelphia to Washington took place in the course of the summer, and Congress met in the Federal city in November. A treaty of peace was now made with the French government, at the head of which was Napoleon Bonaparte.

1801. 8. The votes of the electors for President showed that no one of the candidates had a majority of the whole number of votes. Mr. Jefferson and Mr. Burr had each seventy-three votes, Mr. Adams sixty-five, and Mr. Pinckney sixty-four. The decision consequently had to be made by the House of Representatives. The contest now was between Burr and Jefferson, and thirty-five ballots were taken without electing either of the candidates. But at the thirty-sixth ballot some of Burr's supporters gave way, and Mr. Jefferson was elected, and Mr. Burr, being the second in choice, became Vice-President.

Questions on John Adams' Administration.—1. How was Mr. Pinckney treated in France? What was done by the French cruisers? When did Congress assemble?

2. Who were now sent to France? What intimation was made to them? What was their answer?

3. What vigorous measures were adopted by Congress? Who was appointed commander-in-chief?

4. What vessel was captured by Commodore Truxtun? What envoys were now sent to the French Republic?

5. Why were all public affairs lost sight of? When did Washington die? What was the committee of Congress appointed to devise?

6. What is said of a naval engagement in 1800?

7. When was the seat of government removed from Philadelphia to Washington? How long was the seat of government in the former city? What treaty was made?

8. Give the result of the presidential election. Who was elected President by the House of Representatives? Who became Vice-President? In what year?



THOMAS JEFFERSON'S ADMINISTRATION.

1801. 1. At the commencement of Mr. Jefferson's administration, the United States were at peace with the whole world. The revenue was abundant, commerce flourishing, and the President was not harassed by foreign wars or domestic insurrections. But this halcyon state was of short continuance. Much insolence was displayed by the Barbary States, to whom the United States paid large sums in annual tribute. The Bey of Tripoli had received a gross sum for the purchase of a treaty, but, dissatisfied with not receiving a sum annually, he declared war against the United States.

2. Commodore Dale was sent with four ships into the Mediterranean. On his arrival at Gibraltar he found two cruisers watching for American vessels. These were blockaded by the Philadelphia frigate, while Bainbridge was giving convoy to the American merchant vessels. Dale, in the ship President, followed by the schooner Experiment, set off to cruise off the harbor of Tripoli. On their way the Experiment captured a Tripolitan cruiser, after an action of three hours.

3. As the territory now constituting the state of Ohio had the requisite number of inhabitants, it was admitted as a state into the Union. It originally formed part of the North-West Territory, and was first settled at Marietta in 1788, by emigrants from the New England States. Ohio had increased with wonderful rapidity, although not settled at the close of the Revolution.

4. Much trouble had been anticipated by the refusal of the Spanish to allow the Americans the free navigation of the Mississippi River, and it was feared that the closing of the port of New Orleans to the productions of the United States would occasion war, or the alienation of the western states bordering on the Mississippi. Accordingly negotiations were opened for the purchase of the country of Louisiana. It had been ceded to France in 1800. Bonaparte, knowing that France could not retain it against the naval power of England, sold it to the United States for fifteen millions of dollars, out of which sum three million seven hundred and fifty thousand dollars were to be paid to American citizens for claims on France.

5. The war with Tripoli still continuing, a fleet under command of Commodore Edward Preble was sent out to relieve the ships which had been so long on duty in the Mediterranean. The Philadelphia, commanded by Captain

1803. Bainbridge, while pursuing a vessel attempting to enter the harbor, ran with great force upon a sunken rock, where she remained fixed, and the brave commander was obliged to surrender. The captain and officers were treated with comparative indulgence, but the men were reduced to slavery. The vessel was soon after set afloat and towed into the harbor.

1804. 6. Soon after the loss of the Philadelphia, it was suggested to Commodore Preble to destroy that vessel, then refitting in the harbor of Tripoli. This adventurous operation was intrusted to Lieutenant Decatur. He set sail from Syracuse in a vessel taken from the enemy, and named the Intrepid. He entered the harbor of Tripoli in the evening, and at midnight boarded the captured frigate, overcame the guard, set fire to the vessel, and retreated without loss or injury.

7. Great excitement prevailed in the public mind in consequence of a duel between Vice-President Burr and General Hamilton, in which the latter was killed. Burr, fearful of arrest for murder, escaped to the south, and waited till the public indignation had in some measure subsided. Hamilton was universally lamented, as he was a statesman of rare qualification, and fitted to adorn any station.

8. The blockade of Tripoli was kept up through the summer, and several attacks were made on the city. Soon after, a new squadron arrived, and Commodore Barron, who had superseded Commodore Preble, now took the command. But new alarms of hostilities on the part of Morocco made it necessary for a part of the fleet to cruise near Gibraltar; and at Tripoli nothing was done beyond keeping up the blockade.

9. When the votes for President and Vice-President were counted, it was found that Mr. Jefferson was re-elected

1805. President. George Clinton was elected Vice-

President for four years from the 4th of March. The war with Tripoli still continued. Hamet, the brother of the reigning bashaw of Tripoli, and who had been deprived of his sovereignty and driven into exile, was now sought out by William Eaton, American consul at Tunis, and an army raised to make a land attack on Tripoli. They set out from Alexandria, and, after a weary march through the desert, attacked and captured Derne, a city belonging to Tripoli. But soon after, a treaty of peace was made by Mr. Lear, consul at Algiers, with the Tripolitans. This treaty provided for an exchange of prisoners, but as the bashaw had two hundred more prisoners than the Americans, sixty thousand dollars were paid for their liberation, and no farther aid was to be extended to Hamet.

1806. 10. The wars of Europe furnished a vast amount of trade to American vessels, who, being neutrals, carried on the commerce of Europe, and supplied all its ports with manufactured goods and agricultural productions. The British government became dissatisfied with this commerce with France, and, to prevent it, an order was issued, declaring the coast of France, from Brest to the river Elbe, in a state of blockade. Napoleon, the same year, issued what is known as the Berlin Decree, declaring the British Islands in a state of blockade. In consequence of these acts great numbers of American vessels were taken by both British and French cruisers, and their cargoes confiscated. Another grievance arose from the practice by Great Britain of impressing American seamen, claiming them as British subjects.

1807. 11. Aaron Burr, the late Vice-President of the United States, was brought to trial for high treason. He had collected a large number of men and boats, and it

1807. was charged on him that he designed to effect a separation of the Western States from the Union, or make an attack on the Spanish provinces of Mexico. But in both cases the jury found him not guilty, and this ended the prosecution.

12. By an order from a British admiral, the frigate Chesapeake, Commodore Barron, which was leaving her port for the Mediterranean, was attacked by the British ship Leopard. Three men were killed, eighteen wounded, and four taken as deserters from the British navy. This outrage produced great excitement throughout the country, and the President by proclamation ordered all British armed vessels to leave the harbors of the United States, and forbade all intercourse with them.

13. In November, the British government issued the celebrated "Orders in Council," prohibiting any neutral trade with France, except licensed in a British port. Soon after, Napoleon issued the "Milan Decree," forbidding all trade with England and her colonies, and making vessels sailing from England lawful prizes, thus exposing all American vessels to seizure by one or other of the contending powers. In December, Congress laid an embargo on American ships, which they hoped would compel England and France to repeal decrees so ruinous to American commerce.

1809. 14. The embargo, however, failed of its destined effect, and it was bitterly opposed at home, as putting an end to all commerce with foreign nations. It was repealed by Congress, and an act interdicting all commerce with France and England substituted in its place. Mr. Jefferson having declined a re-election, James Madison was elected President, and George Clinton Vice-President.

Questions on Thomas Jefferson's Administration.—1. Who declared war against the United States, and why?

2. Describe Commodore Dale's expedition against Tripoli.

3. When was Ohio admitted into the Union? Where and when was it first settled? By whom?

4. What large territory was purchased from France? How much was paid for it? How much of the purchase-money was retained for claims due by France?

5. Who commanded the fleet now sent against Tripoli? What happened to the Philadelphia?

6. Who undertook the destruction of that vessel? Relate the circumstances.

7. What excitement prevailed? What is said of Hamilton?

8. What further is said of the war with Tripoli? Who took command of the fleet? What other nation seemed to be hostile?

9. What was the result of the presidential election? Describe a land attack made on Tripoli. By whom was it conducted? By whom was a treaty of peace made? What were its provisions?

10. What order was issued by the British government? What by Napoleon? What was the consequence of these two acts? What other grievance arose?

11. What charge was made against Aaron Burr?

12. What American vessel was attacked by the British ship Leopard? Give the result.

13. What was decreed by the "Orders in Council?" What by the "Milan Decree?" What act was passed by Congress in consequence?

14. What is said of the Embargo? When it was repealed, what act was substituted? Who were elected President and Vice-President?

JAMES MADISON'S ADMINISTRATION.

1809. 1. Mr. Madison entered on the duties of his office at a time when the country was beset with difficulties and dangers. Commerce had been paralyzed by the embargo, and England and France persisted in their obnoxious measures. Soon after his accession, however, a prospect of conciliation was afforded by the assurance of Mr. Erskine, the British minister, that the "Orders in Council" should be repealed by the 10th of June. The President therefore gave notice that commercial intercourse would be renewed on that day. The British ministry, however, disavowed the acts of their minister, and non-intercourse with England was again proclaimed. Mr. Erskine was recalled, and succeeded by Mr. Jackson, whose conduct was so offensive to the American government, that the President declined all communication with him.

1810. 2. The next year Napoleon issued a decree, by which American vessels arriving in any of the ports of France were to be seized, but in November the decree was repealed, and commercial intercourse between the United States and France renewed. England still continued her hostile measures, and intercepted the American merchant vessels, sending them into British ports as lawful prizes.

1811. 3. Commodore Rogers, in the frigate President, encountered a British vessel on the coast, which he hailed; but the commander of the unknown vessel, instead of replying, fired a gun. The fire was promptly returned by Commodore Rogers, and the guns of the stranger silenced. On hailing again the answer was given that the

1811. vessel was the "Little Belt," commanded by Captain Bingham. The British vessel had eleven men killed and twenty-one wounded, and the American vessel one man wounded.

4. The Indians on the western frontiers had now become hostile, and General Harrison, governor of Indiana Territory, marched against the tribes on the Wabash. On his approach to their town the chiefs proposed a conference, and requested him to encamp for the night. But Harrison knew the treachery of the Indian character, and ordered his men to sleep on their arms. Before morning the camp was furiously assailed, and a fierce battle ensued, which resulted in the defeat of the Indians. This battle takes its name from the Tippecanoe, on whose banks it was fought.

1812. 5. During this year Louisiana was admitted into the Union. The first settlement was made in 1699 by a French company, conducted by D'Iberville, a brave and intelligent naval officer. In 1762 the territory was ceded to Spain, and continued under Spanish rule until 1800, when it was retroceded to France, and by that nation conveyed to the United States. (See Jefferson's Administration.)

6. As there seemed to be no prospect of an accommodation with Great Britain, Congress made preparations for hostilities, laid an embargo for ninety days on all vessels within the jurisdiction of the United States, and, on the 18th of June, declared war against that nation. Exertions were made to raise a large army, to enlist men, and call out the militia. General Dearborne, an officer of the Revolution, was appointed commander-in-chief.

7. General Hull, the governor of Michigan Territory, crossed the river Detroit into Canada with a force of two

thousand men, and encamped at Sandwich (July 1812. 12th). While Hull was inactive in camp, the fort at Mackinaw was surprised by a party of British, and its surrender demanded. This was the first intimation the garrison had of the existence of war between the two countries. The demand could not be resisted, and a strong post was thus lost to the United States (July 17th).

8. The loss of this post, the defeat of a detachment, the seizure of his supplies by the enemy, and the inability on the part of the American general to maintain a communication with the government, determined him to fall back on Detroit and act on the defensive. Here he was attacked by General Brock, with a force of British and Indians. The guns were ready to open on the advancing column, when, to the surprise of his men, Hull offered to capitulate. The terms were accepted by the British general, and Detroit and the whole territory of Michigan were surrendered to the enemy.

9. A second army, under General Dearborne, had assembled on Lake Champlain, with a force of militia at different points on the St. Lawrence River; and a third army, under General Van Rensselaer was collected along the Niagara River, from Fort Niagara to Buffalo. A part of this army crossed the river (October 13th) and stormed a battery which had opened a severe fire upon them. Van Rensselaer was severely wounded, and the British general, Brook, was killed. The battle was continued for several hours, but the militia on the American side refused to embark, denying the general's constitutional right to march them into Canada, and, the British being reinforced, the brave troops on the Canada side were obliged to surrender. The total loss, in killed, wounded, and prisoners, was upwards of a thousand. General Van Rensselaer resigned his com-

mand and was succeeded by General Smyth, but
1812. nothing effectual was accomplished by either army during the year.

10. But, although failure had attended the land forces, the navy had performed some brilliant achievements. The Essex, Captain Porter, captured the British sloop Alert, and being soon pursued by the enemy's blockading squadron, escaped into the Delaware. The Constitution, Captain Hull, while cruising off the coast, encountered a British frigate, the Guerriere, which opened a fire on the approach of the American vessel (August 19th). The fire was not, however, returned until the Constitution obtained a favorable position, when broadside after broadside was fired in rapid succession. All the masts of the Guerriere were shot away, and her hull was greatly damaged. She had seventy-eight killed and wounded, and was obliged to surrender. The wreck was set on fire and blown up, and the Constitution returned with her prisoners to Boston.

11. The next naval engagement, in point of time, was between the sloop of war Wasp, commanded by Captain Jacob Jones, and the British brig Frolic (October 13th). After a raking fire on the part of the Americans, the British vessel was boarded, and presented a dreadful scene of carnage, with none at their posts except the man at the wheel, who continued faithful to his trust. The wounded officers made signals of surrender, and the flag was lowered by the American lieutenant. Soon after the battle, both vessels were taken by the Poictiers, seventy-four gun ship, and carried into Bermuda.

12. On the 25th of October, the United States, Captain Decatur, gave chase to a vessel near the Azores, which proved to be the Macedonian. In the action which ensued, the rigging of the Macedonian was greatly damaged, her

1812. masts shot away, and upwards of a hundred of her men killed and wounded. The two vessels were taken into Newport, and thence, through Long Island Sound, to New York.

13. The last naval triumph of this year was the capture of the British frigate *Java*, by the *Constitution*, now commanded by Captain Bainbridge, off the coast of Brazil (December 29th). The *Java's* masts were shot away, her commander and twenty-two of her crew killed, and upwards of a hundred wounded. In consequence of the distance from home, Captain Bainbridge deemed it too hazardous to attempt taking his prize into port. She was therefore set on fire, and the *Constitution*, with her gallant crew, returned to the United States.

14. During this year, George Clinton, the Vice-President, died, and, at the presidential election, Mr. Madison was re-elected President, and Elbridge Gerry Vice-President. General Harrison, who had been appointed to the command of the western army, destined to march against the enemy at Detroit, was busily employed in forwarding provisions to Fort Defiance, Fort McArthur, and Upper Sandusky, with the intention of concentrating his troops at the falls of the Maumee River; but he was unable to advance against the enemy until January.

1813. 15. Orders were now sent to General Winchester, in command of the Kentucky troops at Fort Defiance, to move down the Maumee and occupy the Rapids. A detachment was sent against the British and Indians occupying Frenchtown, on the river Raisin. A sudden attack dislodged the enemy, and General Winchester arrived soon after and took the command. The morning after his arrival his camp was assaulted by a British column from Malden, commanded by Colonel Proctor (January 22d).

1813. The Americans were put to flight and many taken prisoners, among whom was General Winchester. The prisoners were taken to Malden, with the exception of the wounded, who were left at Frenchtown. The next day a band of Indians broke into the houses where the wounded lay and massacred them; the British guard being unable or unwilling to protect them. Harrison now advanced to the Rapids, and took his position at Fort Meigs.

16. A naval engagement, off the mouth of the Demarara, occurred between the *Hornet*, Captain Lawrence, and the British brig *Peacock*. After a brief, but very severe engagement, the *Peacock* struck her flag, hoisting a signal of distress. It was then found that the brig was sinking. Before the prisoners could be transferred to the *Hornet*, the prize suddenly went down, carrying with her nine of her own men and three of the *Hornet*'s. Lawrence set out for home, and arrived safely in New York.

17. In April, Fort Meigs was besieged by the British and Indians from Malden, under Colonel Proctor. Soon after, General Clay, with twelve hundred Kentucky volunteers, arrived. The troops landed and attacked the batteries, but were in turn surprised by Proctor, and made prisoners, with the exception of one hundred and fifty, who escaped into the fort. A sortie from the fort destroyed the battery on the south bank of the river, and Proctor, fearing the arrival of more volunteers, retired to Malden.

18. Commodore Chauncey, having now a fleet on Lake Ontario, consisting of the *Madison*, the *Oneida*, and eleven armed schooners, it was resolved to attack *York, the capital of Upper Canada. A detachment of sixteen hundred from General Dearborne's army crossed the lake in

* Now "Toronto."

1812. this flotilla, and effected a landing on the 27th of April. General Pike led on the troops, and the enemy fled; but the explosion of a magazine killed or wounded two hundred of the Americans, General Pike himself mortally. The town soon after capitulated, and the troops re-embarked for Fort Niagara. Dearborne's army having been reinforced, a landing was effected in Canada, the light troops, under Scott and Forsyth, leading the way. Fort George was abandoned by the British, and all the British posts on the Niagara were soon after evacuated. The enemy now made an attack on Sackett's Harbor, during Commodore Chauncey's absence, and, having effected a landing, destroyed the barracks and magazine. A severe action ensued, and the assailants were driven back to their ships. General Brown, who commanded the militia, was promoted to the rank of brigadier-general in the regular army (May 29th).

19. Lawrence, the brave commander of the *Hornet*, now made captain, had command of the *Chesapeake*, then blockaded in Boston harbor. When the *Chesapeake* was nearly ready for sea, the *Shannon*, Captain Broke, appeared alone off the harbor. Lawrence, regarding this as a challenge, hastened to a deadly encounter. The crew of the *Chesapeake* were discontented, and her most efficient officers were on the sick list. But the commander did not hesitate to follow the *Shannon* some distance out to sea, where the engagement commenced (June 1st). In consequence of an accident to the *Chesapeake's* sails she became exposed to a raking fire, when Lawrence himself fell mortally wounded. The enemy now boarded, took possession of the ship, and carried her to Halifax, where Captain Lawrence was buried with military honors.

20. *Chesapeake Bay* was invaded by a British squadron,

1813. which carried a large body of troops, many of whom were of the worst class of society. They first made an attack on Norfolk, which was gallantly repulsed. They then landed at Hampton, which they captured, and were guilty of the most shocking brutalities. Frenchtown, Havre-de-Grace, Georgetown, and Frederick were burned, and considerable alarm was excited on the coasts of Delaware Bay by the bombardment of Lewes, a village near Cape Henlopen.

21. For some time nothing had been effected on the western frontier. General Harrison was waiting for reinforcements, and the armies at *Fort George and *Burlington were inoperative for want of commanders. Proctor, on the 21st of July, advanced against Fort Meigs, but failing to induce the garrison to sally out, he advanced against Fort Stephenson, at Lower Sandusky. This post was gallantly defended by Major Croghan. He repulsed the enemy, who retreated that night, and returned to Malden. The *Argus*, sloop of war, Captain Allen, captured twenty-one merchant vessels in the British Channel. An engagement took place, on the 13th of August, between that vessel and the British sloop of war *Pelican*, when the *Argus* was captured, and her brave commander mortally wounded. Another naval action took place on the 5th of September, between the American brig *Enterprise* and the British brig *Boxer*. The *Enterprise* struck her colors after a severe engagement, in which both commanders were killed.

22. An Indian war now broke out in Georgia and Alabama. A large body of the Creeks commenced hostilities by murdering the whites. The inhabitants in the south-

* The American army at Fort George and the British at Burlington.

1813. west of Alabama collected in forts, one of which, Fort Mimms, on the Alabama River, was surprised by the Indians, and its inmates, with the exception of a few who escaped, were massacred. General Jackson, with an army, marched against them, and defeated them at Talladega, Attossee, and Tallushatchee.

Review 23. Oliver H. Perry, a young naval officer, having, by energy and perseverance, equipped a small fleet at Erie, Pennsylvania, sailed for Malden, to offer battle to the enemy. His fleet consisted of nine vessels, carrying fifty-four guns. The British fleet consisted of six vessels, carrying sixty-three guns, commanded by Commodore Barclay. The two fleets met on the 10th of September, at an early hour in the morning, but, the wind being light, they did not come to close action until noon. The enemy's fire concentrated on the Lawrence, Perry's flag-ship, and continued for more than two hours, dismounting her guns, disabling her sails, making her almost a wreck, and producing great slaughter. Perry now took a boat and passed to the Niagara, commanded by Captain Elliott.

24. The British ships were now thrown into disorder, and the Niagara passing through their line discharged a succession of broadsides with such terrific effect, that the enemy's vessels all surrendered. The battle lasted three hours, with a loss of about one hundred and fifty men on each side in killed and wounded. Commodore Perry now took General Harrison's troops on board, and conveyed them to the Canada side. Proctor retreated immediately from Fort Malden. Harrison set out in pursuit, and, on arriving opposite Detroit, was joined by Colonel Johnson's mounted regiment.

25. The pursuit was continued, and on the 4th of October Harrison came up with the rear of Proctor's army,

and captured his stores and ammunition. The next day the main body was overtaken near the Moravian town on the Thames River, the regulars being supported by Tecumseh and a band of Indians. The regulars were attacked by Johnson's mounted men, and completely broken at the first charge, when they threw down their arms and surrendered. Proctor and two hundred escaped by timely flight. The Indians fought bravely for some time, but Tecumseh having fallen, they made a precipitate retreat. The American loss was seventeen killed, and thirty wounded, among whom was Colonel Johnson himself very severely. General Cass, who was now appointed governor of Michigan, was left with his brigade to garrison Detroit, and General Harrison with his regulars embarked for Buffalo, to co-operate with the army on Lake Ontario for the conquest of Upper Canada.

1814. 26. The Creek War in Alabama still continued. Early in January, General Jackson marched to the relief of General Floyd, but was attacked by a large force with great spirit. Though the Indians were repulsed, Jackson deemed it advisable to fall back to Fort Strother, where he was attacked by the Creeks (January 24th). On the 27th, the Indians assailed Floyd's camp, and were repelled, after a severe struggle. General Jackson was now reinforced by four thousand Tennessee militia, a regiment of regulars, and a large number of friendly Indians. With this force he marched to the Great Bend of the river Tallapoosa. Here he found the main body of the enemy were strongly posted at Tohopeka, or the Horse-Shoe Bend. The battle continued with great obstinacy for five hours, when the Indians were defeated with great slaughter. Very few prisoners were taken, except women and children. This battle put an end to the war. The Indians made no

1814. further resistance, but submitted to the victorious general, with the exception of a portion of the tribe who escaped to Florida.

27. The *Essex*, Commodore Porter, had been very successful on the Pacific Ocean. Having returned to Valparaiso, she was attacked by two vessels, the frigate *Phoebe* and the sloop of war *Cherub*. After a desperate resistance against this unequal force, Porter was compelled to surrender (March 28th). On the 21st of April, the new sloop of war *Frolic* was captured by the British frigate *Orpheus*. The *Peacock*, Captain Warrington, captured the brig *Epervier*, with \$118,000 in specie, and carried her prize into Savannah (April 27th). The *Wasp*, Captain Blakely, captured and destroyed the *Reindeer*, near the English Channel, and then put into L'Orient for repairs.

28. The next important event of the year was another invasion of Canada. The expedition was conducted by General Brown, assisted by Generals Scott and Ripley. Crossing the Niagara from Buffalo, they came to Fort Erie early in the morning of July 3d. The small garrison holding this post surrendered the same day, without resistance. The next day, General Scott led the advance against General Riall, at Chippewa, and having driven in the British outposts, he was joined by General Brown, with the rest of the army.

29. On the 5th, the British advanced on the Americans, and the battle commenced with skirmishes of the light troops. The British were driven back by General Porter, but finding the main army under General Riall advancing, they rallied and in turn attacked Porter, whose light troops broke and fled. At this juncture, General Scott's brigade was moving forward, and soon encountered the main army under General Riall, which had crossed the Chippewa, and

1814. formed on the plain. Major Jéssup attacked the enemy on the right wing, and, after a severe encounter, caused them to retire. General Scott ordered his men to charge, which they did so effectually, supported by Towson's artillery, that the British broke and fled, fairly routed in an open plain. They fled to their intrenchments beyond the Chippewa, closely pursued by General Scott, who took a large number of prisoners.

30. After the battle of Chippewa, General Riall reinforced the forts near the mouth of the Niagara River, and then retired to Burlington Heights, near the head of Lake Ontario. On the 25th of July, General Brown received information that the enemy were crossing the Niagara River at Queenstown. He immediately despatched General Scott, with a detachment of thirteen hundred men, to threaten the forts at the mouth of the Niagara. Just above the Falls, Scott learned that the enemy was drawn up in force to oppose him. Supposing that it was a remnant of the British army, he dashed forward to disperse them, and was astonished to find the whole British army drawn up in order of battle on Lundy's Lane.

31. Notwithstanding the disparity of numbers, however, Scott gallantly maintained his position, and sent to General Brown to hasten up the reserved forces. The battle commenced a little before sunset, and continued till midnight. General Riall was wounded in the onset, and, with several other officers, was made prisoner. About nine o'clock, General Brown came to the relief of Scott, and directed General Ripley to form a new line with the advancing forces, and thus relieve General Scott's exhausted troops. The enemy's battery on an adjoining eminence commanded the field of action. In order to obtain the victory, it was necessary to seize this battery. This duty was assigned to

1814. Colonel Miller, who, on being asked if he could take the battery, answered, "I will try." He advanced steadily and gallantly to the charge, captured the position, and seized the cannon. The British made desperate attempts to recover their lost ground, but failed in each attempt, and the contest closed by the field of battle remaining in possession of the Americans.

32. General Scott was severely wounded in this battle. He had two horses shot under him, and was finally disabled from a musket-ball through his shoulder. General Brown was also wounded, but did not at once resign the command. The army fell back to Chippewa, but learning that General Drummond with a large British column was fast approaching, General Brown fell back to Fort Erie, of which post he directed General Gaines to take the command. On the 3d of August, General Drummond arrived at Fort Erie, and commenced his preparations for a siege. On the 13th he commenced a cannonade, and, on the 15th, attempted to storm the works. The assailants were met and repulsed on every side, one column only proving for a short time successful. This party got possession of an exterior bastion, but soon after were driven out by the explosion of a quantity of cartridges in a small stone building within it. The enemy lost in this unsuccessful attack more than nine hundred men.

33. While the British were besieging Fort Erie, a successful invasion was made by a fleet under Admiral Cochrane, which resulted in the capture of Washington. The fleet, with four thousand five hundred troops under General Ross, entered the Chesapeake Bay on the 18th of August, and disembarked on the 20th at Benedict, on the Patuxent, without opposition. Commodore Barney, who had command of a flotilla of gun-boats, destroyed them on the approach

of the enemy, and thus nothing opposed their
1814. march until they reached Bladensburg.

34. General Winder made a stand at the latter place, and was attacked by the enemy on the 24th. The battle commenced at one o'clock, and lasted till four, when the Americans were obliged to give way, and the British marched the same evening into Washington. The Secretary of the Navy ordered the destruction of the stores in the Navy Yard, and the burning of two vessels, to prevent their falling into the hands of the British. The President and his cabinet officers, and the principal inhabitants, fled on the approach of the British troops. The British burned the Capitol, the President's House, the Treasury and War Offices, the State Department, the Library of Congress, the bridge across the Potomac, and several unoffending private dwellings. The next night they left the sacked and plundered city, and, after four days' march, arrived at Benedict, where they re-embarked. A detachment of Cochrane's fleet sailed up the Potomac, and anchored before Alexandria, which surrendered at discretion, giving up twenty-one merchant vessels, and a large quantity of merchandise, with which the enemy successfully retreated, the Americans being unable to make any effective opposition.

35. The *Wasp*, after refitting at L'Orient, subsequently to her hard-fought battle with the *Reindeer*, put to sea, and, on September 1st, engaged and captured the British sloop of war *Avon*, which sank soon after striking. The *Wasp* made three other prizes, and was last seen October 9th, near the Cape Verde Islands. From that time she was never heard of; the good vessel, with her brave captain and gallant crew, perished at sea; far from human succor, they sank into the depths of unknown waters. The

1814. Americans now had no navy on the ocean, and it is mortifying to state that at sea the American flag floated from no national vessel.

36. General Izard, in command of the army at Plattsburg, was ordered to Sackett's Harbor, with four thousand men, the flower of his army, to co-operate with General Brown, should occasion present. General Prevost now advanced against Plattsburg, with twelve thousand men. General Macomb, with his forces, was strongly intrenched behind the Saranac, a rapid and unfordable stream. The enemy spent four days in throwing up batteries and preparing for an attack, which they resolved should commence with the appearance of their fleet. In the mean time, Commodore M'Donough's squadron anchored in Plattsburg Bay. It consisted of fourteen vessels, carrying eighty-six guns and eight hundred and fifty men. The British fleet, commanded by Captain Downie, consisted of seventeen vessels, carrying ninety-five guns, and manned by one thousand seamen.

37. The battle commenced on the 11th of September, between the two fleets. Captain Downie attempted to carry his fleet into the harbor, but his largest vessel suffered so severely, he was obliged to abandon it at the distance of a quarter of a mile from the American ships. The battle continued for more than two hours, when the flag-ship of the enemy having surrendered, the other vessels soon followed her example. On shore the enemy attacked Macomb's position, but were unsuccessful in every attempt. The same evening the British retreated in haste, leaving their sick and wounded behind, and a part of their military stores.

38. The same day which witnessed M'Donough's victory, the British fleet in the Chesapeake appeared off the Patapsco. The following morning, General Ross, with five thousand men, landed at North Point, fourteen miles from Baltimore,

1814. and immediately marched towards that city. The defence of the city had been intrusted to ten thousand militia, including the city regiments, and some volunteers from Pennsylvania. One division was under the command of General Stricker, the other was confided to General Winder, and the whole under the command of General Samuel Smith. As General Ross, at the head of a reconnoitering party, approached the outposts of the Americans, a skirmish ensued, in which Ross was killed, but, the main body coming up, the militia were driven from the ground. The command of the British now devolved on Colonel Brooke, who led the army near the American lines. The British rested on the field that night, and the fleet opened a heavy bombardment on Fort M'Henry. Major Armistead returned the fire, and the bombardment was continued through the night, after which the British troops retired to their ships, re-embarked, and abandoned the attack on Baltimore.

39. In the mean time the siege of Fort Erie continued. General Brown, who had recovered from his wounds, took command of the fort, and, on the 17th of September, made a sally on the British works, which he surprised, exploded the magazines, rendered their guns useless, and captured four hundred prisoners. The British soon after raised the siege, and retired to Chippewa. In this sally of the Americans, General Ripley was severely wounded while spiking the enemy's guns. General Drummond remained a short time at Chippewa, and then retired to Fort George. Soon after, General Izard, who superseded General Brown in command of the army, arrived. Fort Erie was demolished, and the army went into winter quarters at Buffalo, Black Rock, and Batavia (November 5th).

40. General Jackson, who had command of the southern

1814. department of the army, found that two British sloops of war had landed troops at Pensacola, and were arming the fugitive Creeks. He immediately marched against that city, which he entered without opposition, and compelled the British to take to their shipping, and leave the harbor. As a report prevailed that a large British fleet was proceeding against New Orleans, General Jackson hastened by way of Mobile to that city. On the 21st of December, the British fleet entered Lake Borgne, and soon landed on the banks of the Mississippi. Here an engagement took place on the 23d, which was renewed on the 27th and 28th, and the enemy's advance checked.

41. Great alarm was caused to the government by the celebrated Hartford Convention. The people of New England had been dissatisfied with the war, and, agreeably to a recommendation of the Massachusetts Legislature, delegates were appointed to deliberate on the public measures of the Federal Government. The assembly met at Hartford on the 15th of December, and consisted of twenty-six delegates. Twelve members were appointed by the legislature of Massachusetts, seven by Connecticut, four by Rhode Island, two by county meetings in New Hampshire, and one by a similar meeting in Vermont. After deliberating with closed doors for twenty days, they proposed several amendments to the Federal Constitution, and messengers were sent to Washington to request that a portion of the public taxes should be appropriated to the defence of the New England States. Elbridge Gerry, the Vice-President, whose health had for some time past been failing, died in the month of November.

1815. 42. The commencement of the new year found the British army before New Orleans, making extensive preparations for the capture of that city. General

1815. Jackson had been actively engaged in his preparations for defence. Not relying on the citizens of New Orleans, many of whom were aliens, he proclaimed martial law, threw up a line of intrenchments, strongly defended by artillery, and with a deep ditch in front. To guard against an attack on the opposite side of the river, General Morgan had been sent to throw up similar defences. On the morning of the 8th of January, the main body of the British army, led by General Packenham, advanced to storm Jackson's position. The British soldiers advanced with a determined air, attended by detachments bearing fascines and ladders. The American artillery opened on them with a destructive fire; but they still moved on with a firm step, fresh troops taking the place of the fallen. At last, when they came within range of the rifles and muskets, they were thrown into confusion. General Packenham was killed, General Gibbs mortally wounded, and General Keene so severely, that he died soon after the battle.

43. The command now devolved on General Lambert, who withdrew his forces, and abandoned the contest. The enemy on the opposite side of the river, led by Colonel Thornton, had been successful, but the British army had lost two thousand men, and Lambert, dreading further disasters, fell back to the landing-place on Lake Borgne, from which place the army re-embarked and left the coast.

44. The Constitution, commanded by Commodore Charles Stewart, had succeeded in getting out of Boston Harbor, where she had been so long blockaded. Commodore Decatur, now in command of the President, left New York, expecting to be joined by the Hornet and Peacock. The next morning (January 15th) he was chased by a squadron of British vessels. The Endymion frigate, which was in advance of the other vessels, was soon disabled by the

1815. President, but, the other vessels coming up, Decatur, not wishing to sacrifice his men in an unequal contest, surrendered.

45. Hardly had the rejoicings for the preservation of New Orleans begun, before the public attention was called to an event more joyful than that occasioned by the clash of arms or the shouts for victories. The sloop of war Favorite, under a flag of truce, arrived at New York on the 11th of February, bringing intelligence that a treaty of peace had been signed, December 24th, at Ghent, by the British and American commissioners, and ratified by the British government. This treaty was immediately forwarded to Washington, laid before the Senate, and unanimously ratified by that body on the 17th of February.

46. Three naval engagements took place after the conclusion of peace. The Constitution, after a severe battle with the British sloops of war Cyane and Levant, compelled each one to surrender. The Hornet, Captain Biddle, encountered and captured the brig of war Penguin, after a sharp engagement, March 23d, and the Peacock, Captain Warrington, on the 20th of June, captured the Nautilus, in the Straits of Sunda. Captain Warrington being now informed of the existence of peace, the prize was immediately given up. Thus ended hostilities between Great Britain and the United States.

47. During the war with Great Britain, the Dey of Algiers had dismissed Mr. Lear, the American consul, and declared war against the United States. Commodore Decatur, with a fleet of ten vessels, was sent to Algiers. On his way he captured two Algerine ships of war, one of them the largest vessel in the Algerine navy. On the 30th of June he appeared with his squadron off the harbor of Algiers, when the terrified Dey at once agreed to sign a treaty, by which

1815. he surrendered all prisoners, made indemnity for captures, and relinquished all claim to future tribute. Treaties were made during the year at Detroit, with the north-western tribes of Indians.

1816. 48. Congress was occupied during the session with a tariff bill, and the adoption of measures to increase the public revenue. A bill was passed incorporating the "*Bank of the United States*," with a capital of thirty-five millions of dollars. This bank was located in Philadelphia. Indiana was admitted into the Union as a state, December 11th. The first settlement in the state was made by the French, at Vincennes, at an early period, though the exact time is not known, but supposed to be about the year 1690. In 1763 the territory was ceded by treaty to England. A territorial government was organized over it in 1801, under which it remained until admitted as an independent state of the growing confederacy. At the presidential election, James Monroe was chosen to succeed Mr. Madison, and Daniel D. Tompkins, of New York, was elected Vice-President, entering on the duties of their respective offices, March 4th, 1817.

Questions on James Madison's Administration.—1. What was promised by the British minister at Washington? Was the promise fulfilled? What is said of Mr. Jackson?

2. What is said of commercial intercourse with France? What did England still do?

3. Give an account of the President and Little Belt. Who were the commanders?

4. Who was sent against the Indians? What did the chiefs propose? Give an account of their attack.

5. When was Louisiana admitted into the Union? When and by whom was the first settlement made? What occurred in 1762? In 1800? By whom was it sold to the United States?

6. What act did Congress now pass? What was done on the 18th of June? Who was commander-in-chief?

7. Describe General Hull's invasion of Canada. What fort was captured by the British? Give the dates of both events.

8. Why did Hull fall back on Detroit? By whom was he attacked? What did Hull surrender?

9. Where had a second army assembled? A third army? What did General Van Rensselaer do? Who was wounded, and who killed in this engagement? What did the militia on the American side of the Niagara refuse to do? What was the consequence? Who succeeded General Van Rensselaer? What was accomplished?

10. What was done by the Essex, Captain Porter? The Constitution? Give an account of the battle. Who were the commanders?

11. What was the next naval engagement? Describe the battle. What took place after the battle?

12. When and where did the next naval battle occur? Describe it. To what port where the vessels taken?

13. What other naval triumph occurred in 1812? Where was this battle fought? What was the result? What did Captain Bainbridge do with the captured vessel?

14. What executive officer died this year? Who were elected President and Vice-President? What was General Harrison doing?

15. What orders were sent to General Winchester? Where was a detachment sent? By whom was the camp of General Winchester assaulted? What was the result? What was done by the Indians? What did Harrison do?

16. When and where did a naval engagement take place? Give a description of the battle.

17. By whom was Fort Meigs besieged? Describe the assault on General Clay's detachment.

18. What was the amount of vessels in Chauncey's fleet? Who commanded the detachment against York? Describe the battle. What is said of General Pike? Whose army was sent to Canada? What place was attacked by the enemy in Chauncey's absence? Describe the engagement. To what rank was General Brown promoted?

19. To what command was Lawrence promoted? What battle ensued? Who was mortally wounded? Where was the captured ship taken?

20. What towns on Chesapeake Bay were attacked, captured, and burned?

21. Give an account of Proctor's doings. The attack on Fort Stephenson. What did the Argus capture? When and by what vessel was the Argus captured? Who was mortally wounded? What other naval engagement took place? Give the result.

22. Where did an Indian war break out? Who commenced hostilities? What fort did they capture? Who marched against them?

23. Where was a fleet equipped? Who was the commander, and what did his fleet consist of? Who commanded the British fleet? Of what did it consist? When did the two fleets meet? Describe the engagement to the time Perry went on board the Niagara.

24. What was done by the Niagara? How long did the battle last? What did Commodore Perry do after the battle?

25. When and where did Harrison overtake Proctor's main army? By whom were his regulars supported? By whom were they attacked? What is said of Proctor? Tecumseh? Who was severely wounded? What is said of General Cass? General Harrison?

26. Where did General Jackson go in January, 1814? By whom was he attacked? To what fort did he fall back? After he received reinforcements what did he do? Where were the enemy posted? How long did the battle continue, and with what result?

27. Who commanded the Essex? What is said of her cruise? Where and by what two vessels was she attacked? What was Porter obliged to do? When and by whom was the Frolic captured? What prize was taken by the Peacock? Who commanded the Peacock, and where did he carry his prize?

28. By whom was Canada invaded? By whom was he assisted? When and where did they cross the Niagara River? What fort was captured? What did General Scott do July 4th?

29. What did the British do on the 5th of July? By whom

were the British driven back? What is said of Scott's brigade? Of Major Jessup? Of General Scott?

30. What did General Riall do after the battle of Chippewa? Who was sent against the enemy on the 25th of July? Where did he encounter the whole army?

31. What did Scott do? When did the battle commence, and how long did it continue? What did General Brown direct General Ripley to do? Who captured the enemy's battery? How was the battle closed? Who were taken prisoners?

32. What happened to General Scott? General Brown? To what post did General Brown fall back? By whom was he besieged? What disaster befell the enemy?

33. Who commanded a British fleet in Chesapeake Bay? Who commanded the land forces? When and where did they disembark? What did Commodore Barney do?

34. What did General Winder do? Describe the battle. What city was taken the same day? What was ordered by the Secretary of the Navy? What did the British burn? When did they leave the city? What was done at Alexandria?

35. What vessel was captured by the Wasp? Where was the Wasp last seen? After her loss what is said of the American flag?

36. To what place was General Izard sent? Who advanced against Plattsburg? Where was General Macomb? What squadron anchored in the bay? What did it consist of? Who commanded the British fleet, and what was its force?

37. When did the battle commence between the fleets? Describe the battle. What was done on shore?

38. When and where did General Ross land with an army? To whom had the defence of the city been intrusted? What generals commanded the divisions, and who had the chief command? Who was killed in a skirmish? On whom did the command of the British army devolve? What fort was bombarded? What did the British do that night?

39. What did General Brown do at Fort Erie? What did the British do soon after? Who was wounded in the sally at Fort Erie? What is said of General Drummond? General Izard? Fort Erie?

40. Why did General Jackson enter Pensacola with an army? Where did a British army land on the 21st of December? When and where did engagements take place?

41. When did the Hartford Convention meet, and of what was it composed? What did they propose? What did they send messengers to request of government? Who died in November?

42. When did the battle of New Orleans occur, and who were the commanders? Describe the battle? Who were killed?

43. On whom did the command of the British army now devolve? Who commanded on the opposite side of the river? What did Lambert do?

44. What is said of the frigate Constitution? Of Commodore Decatur? Of the capture of the President?

45. To what was the public attention called? When did the intelligence of peace arrive? When and where was the treaty signed? When was it ratified by the Senate?

46. What three naval engagements took place after the conclusion of peace? Name the American commanders?

47. What was done by the Dey of Algiers? Who commanded the fleet sent against him? What took place on the 30th of June?

48. What bill was passed by Congress? Where was the Bank located? When was Indiana admitted into the Union? Where was the first settlement made? What was done in 1763? In 1801? Who was elected President? Vice-President?

JAMES MONROE'S ADMINISTRATION.

1817. 1. Soon after Mr. Monroe's inauguration he set out on a tour through the Middle and Eastern States. Party spirit had abated much of its virulence, and the President was everywhere received with the honor and respect due the head of a great and enlightened nation. At the next session of Congress Mississippi was acknowledged as an independent state, and admitted into the Union (December 10th). The first settlement was made in 1699, at the head of the Bay of Biloxi, by the French, who built a fort, and continued to occupy it as a settlement till 1702, when they removed to Mobile. In 1702 a bluff on the Mississippi River was selected as the site for a town, and named Rosalie, in honor of the Countess of Pontchartrain. This was settled by the French in 1716, and is now the flourishing city of Natchez.

2. In the latter part of this year a new Indian war broke out on the southern frontier. Great complaint had been made by the people of Georgia of depredations by the Seminoles and refugee Creeks residing south of Flint River, and in Florida, then a Spanish province. General Gaines, commanding at Fort Scott, by orders from the War Department to expel them from the district north of Florida, marched against them, and two skirmishes ensued. A boat coming up the Apalachicola was soon after attacked by the Indians, and forty out of fifty persons were killed.

1818. 3. General Jackson now received orders to march against the Indians, which he did, with a large force, and destroyed the Seminole villages in the neighbor-

hood of the present town of Tallahassee. The American general then marched against the Spanish fort at St. Marks, and demanded its surrender. Two British subjects, Arbuthnot and Ambrister, tried before a court-martial on a charge of inciting the Indians to make war with the United States, and furnishing means to carry it on, were found guilty and put to death. General Jackson now marched against Pensacola, which capitulated without resistance. These captures were justified on a plea that the Spaniards were aiding and encouraging the Seminoles in their outrages.

4. In December Illinois was admitted into the Union. The first settlement in this state was made by the French, at Kaskaskia, and was at first the seat of a Jesuit mission. * "It is the oldest European settlement in the valley of the Mississippi," and the date of its settlement is probably about the year 1686. It was a part of Indiana until 1809, when a distinct territorial government was organized for

it. The commissioners under the treaty of Ghent
1819. now agreed on the forty-ninth parallel of latitude from the Lake of the Woods to the Rocky Mountains, as the boundary between British America and the United States, and the right of American citizens to fish in certain portions of the Gulf of St. Lawrence. Alabama was now admitted into the Union. The first settlement in this state was made by the French, at Mobile, in 1702. In 1800 it formed part of the Mississippi Territory, and in 1817, on the separation of Mississippi, it became the territory of Alabama, until its admission as a state.

5. In March, Maine, which had been a district
1820. belonging to Massachusetts, became an independent

* Bancroft, Vol. III., p. 195.

1820. state, and was admitted into the Union. The first settlement in Maine was made by the French, in 1613, on Mount Desert Island, and broken up by Argall. The Plymouth company made an unsuccessful attempt to plant a colony, but no permanent settlement was effected until 1625, when the huts of fishermen were scattered along the seacoast. Among the earliest towns were Saco, York, and Cape Porpoise. In 1652 the people of Maine placed themselves under the jurisdiction of Massachusetts, and remained so until the adoption of a State Constitution, and admission into the Union as a sovereign state.

1821. 6. On the proposal to admit Missouri into the Union, a violent debate arose as to whether it should be admitted as a slave state. It was finally admitted as a slave state, with the proviso that in all other territory west of the Mississippi and north of thirty-six degrees thirty minutes north latitude, slavery should be prohibited. This is what is called the "Missouri Compromise." The first permanent settlement was made by the French, at St. Genevieve, in 1663.

7. On the 5th of March Mr. Monroe entered on the second term of office. Mr. Tompkins had also been re-elected Vice-President. A treaty between Spain and the United States, ratified this year, ceded East and West Florida, with all the adjacent islands, to the United States, in extinction of the various American claims, to satisfy which the American government agreed to pay the claimants five millions of dollars. General Jackson, as commissioner of the United States, took formal possession of the territory in July, and a territorial government was established in 1822.

1822. 8. During this year an expedition was sent against the numerous piratical vessels which in-

1822. fested the Gulf of Mexico and the Caribbean Sea.

Captain Allen, a brave officer, being killed while in the discharge of his duty, it was determined by Congress that a squadron, under Commodore Porter, should be sent to the haunts of the pirates. The object of the expedition was completely successful; the haunts of the pirates were broken up, and their vessels captured and destroyed.

1824. 9. The visit of that brave Revolutionary officer, General La Fayette, to the United States, occasioned general rejoicing. He remained upwards of a year in the country, during which time he travelled more than five thousand miles, and visited every state in the Union. He was everywhere received with the greatest respect and affection; and triumphal arches, illuminations, processions, and other tokens of the people's joy, proclaimed his welcome to the land he had assisted to liberate, to which he now came, "The Nation's Guest."

1825. 10. At the presidential election four persons were supported as candidates, but no one had a majority of the whole number of electors. General Jackson received ninety-nine votes, Mr. Adams eighty-four, Mr. Crawford forty-one, and Mr. Clay thirty-seven. In the House of Representatives, who, by the Constitution, select one from the three highest on the list, Mr. Adams received the votes of thirteen states, General Jackson seven states, and Mr. Crawford four states. Mr. Adams was, therefore, elected President. John C. Calhoun, of South Carolina, was elected Vice-President.

Questions on James Monroe's Administration.—1. What did the President do soon after his inauguration? When was Mississippi admitted into the Union? When and where was the first settlement made? Where did the settlers remove in 1702? What town was settled in 1716?

2. What war broke out in 1817? What orders were given to General Gaines?

3. What did General Jackson do? Why did he invade Florida? Who was put to death, and why?

4. When was Illinois admitted into the Union? Where was the first settlement made, and when? Of what state was Illinois a part? What boundary was agreed upon? When was Alabama admitted into the Union? When and where was the first settlement made? What did it form in 1800? In 1817?

5. When was Maine admitted into the Union? When and where was the first settlement made? What were the first settled towns? What was done in 1652?

6. What were the provisions of the Missouri Compromise? When was Missouri admitted? When and where was the first permanent settlement?

7. What occurred on the 5th of March? What was ceded by the treaty between Spain and the United States? What sum was appropriated to pay claims against Spain? Who took formal possession of the territory?

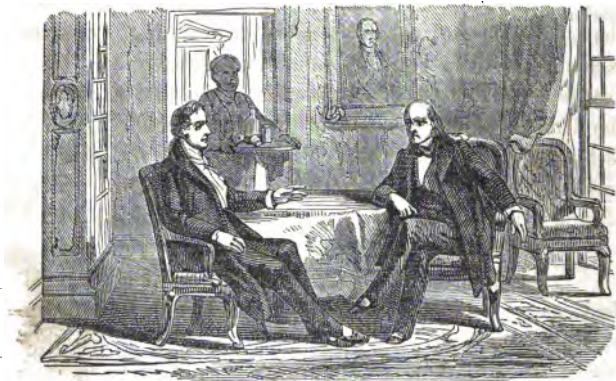
8. What expedition was sent out? Who was killed? What is said of Commodore Porter's expedition?

9. Give an account of General La Fayette's reception.

10. State the result of the presidential election by the electors. In the House of Representatives. Who was elected Vice-President?

JOHN QUINCY ADAMS' ADMINISTRATION.

1825. 1. General La Fayette, on returning from his tour through the different sections of the Union, became a guest at the presidential mansion. He left Washington in September, and returned to France in the frigate Brandywine. At the previous session of Congress, in "consideration of his very important services, his sacrifices and losses," it was voted that two hundred thousand dollars in money, and a township of land, should be granted him. This measure was passed by a large majority of both houses, and approved by the President (Mr. Monroe).



LA FAYETTE, THE NATION'S GUEST.

1826. 2. The fiftieth anniversary of American independence found the country at peace with all the world, and the nation in the full career of prosperity. The territory of the United States had been enlarged. From

1826. thirteen feeble states, they had increased in number to twenty-four powerful ones; from three millions to ten millions of people; the Mississippi had long since ceased to be the western boundary, and the country now extended to the Pacific Ocean.

3. The day was celebrated as the national anniversary, but it was marked by a wonderful coincidence. *On that day two of the three surviving signers of the Declaration died. One penned the instrument, and the other sustained it in debate. Both had taken active parts in public affairs, and both had filled the highest office in the gift of the people. Mr. Adams died at Quincy, Massachusetts, in the ninety-first year of his age, and Mr. Jefferson, at Monticello, Virginia, in his eighty-fourth year.

1827. 4. The administration of Mr. Adams was not disturbed by foreign wars or domestic insurrections. The arts of peace flourished, and internal improvements received a large share of public attention. This year is celebrated for the completion of the first railroad in the United States, a mode of travelling which connects distant states by diminishing the time formerly spent in travel. Party spirit was active and bitter. During Mr. Monroe's term of office it had subsided, but it now revived

1828. with the utmost vindictiveness. At the ensuing election the result was largely in favor of General Jackson, who was elected President, and John C. Calhoun was re-elected Vice-President.

Questions on John Quincy Adams' Administration.—1. Who became the guest of the President? When and in what vessel did

* Charles Carroll, of Carrollton, Maryland, the last surviving signer, died in 1832, aged ninety-five years.

he leave Washington? Recite the section of an act passed by Congress at the previous session.

2. What is said of the condition of the country at the fiftieth anniversary of Independence?

3. What deaths occurred on the 4th of July? What is said of Jefferson? Adams? What is said in the note, of Charles Carroll?

4. What is said of party spirit? Who was elected President? Vice-President?

ANDREW JACKSON'S ADMINISTRATION.

1829. 1. General Jackson entered on his first term of service under favorable circumstances. Universal peace and national prosperity combined to make his administration an era of ease and happiness. But this state of peace was of short continuance. Party spirit increased in violence, in consequence of his numerous removals from office; the renewal of Indian wars, and resistance to congressional enactments by a portion of the confederacy, made the President's position one of care, of turmoil, and excitement.

1831. 2. James Monroe, the fifth President of the United States, died on the 4th of July, 1831, being the third ex-president who had yielded up his life on the national anniversary. Mr. Monroe had, like his predecessors, filled many important stations. He joined the Revolutionary army at an early period of the war, and was wounded at the battle of Princeton. He was successively member of Congress, senator, governor of Virginia, minister to France and Great Britain, Secretary of State, and President.

1832.

3. A war broke out this year with the Indian tribes of Sacs, Foxes, and Winnebagoes, led by the celebrated chief Black Hawk. These tribes had ceded their lands on the east of the Mississippi, and agreed to remove to the west of that river. But having violated the treaty, a body of troops was sent against them. After a succession of skirmishes, they were finally defeated and dispersed on the banks of the Mississippi by General Atkinson, and Black Hawk was taken prisoner. As the government apprehended a general Indian war, General Scott was ordered to proceed to the scene of action, and take command of the forces.

4. In the beginning of July he embarked at Buffalo, with nearly one thousand troops, few of whom, however, ever reached the battle-field. A mightier destroyer than war arrested their course, and filled their ranks with disease and death. This was that terrible pestilence, the Asiatic Cholera. Of nine hundred and fifty men who left Buffalo, but four hundred survived. Scott paid every attention to the sick and suffering, and, as soon as he could be released, hastened to join General Atkinson at Prairie du Chien. He came in soon after the battle, and remained until treaties were made with the Indian tribes. The one with the Sacs and Foxes ceded to the United States a large tract, constituting the greater part of the present state of Iowa. The Winnebagoes ceded nearly five millions of acres, comprehending a valuable part of Wisconsin.

5. In Congress a bill was brought forward to recharter the United States Bank, which passed both houses, but was vetoed by the President. A tariff bill, imposing additional duties on foreign commodities, caused great excitement in South Carolina. A state convention declared the tariff acts unconstitutional, and therefore null and void, and that the

1832. duties should not be paid. This measure is known by the name of Nullification, and was met by a proclamation from the President, in which he warned the nullifiers of the consequences of opposition to the general government, and declared his intention to execute the laws. The difficulty was removed by the adoption of a "Compromise Bill," which provided for a gradual reduction of the duties which had operated so injuriously to the Southern States. General Jackson was elected President for a second term, and Martin Van Buren Vice-President.

1833. 6. Great excitement was now created by the removal of the government deposits from the Bank of the United States, and their transfer to certain state banks. The President, in his annual message, stated that the claims due and acknowledged by the French government remained unpaid, though measures had been taken to press the claim on the part of the American government.

1835. 7. No attention having been given by the French government to the claims due to the United States, the President recommended vigorous measures to compel payment. All diplomatic intercourse was suspended, and it was feared that a war would ensue between the two countries. But an amicable arrangement was effected soon afterwards, and the amount due, five millions of dollars, has since been paid.

8. This year is celebrated for the most formidable and obstinately contested Indian war in which the United States ever engaged. It was the Seminole war in Florida. It commenced by the murder of planters, the ravage of their plantations, and the burning of their houses. Osceola, one of the principal chiefs of the Seminoles, was the chief instigator of the war. He was a bold, daring, and ferocious warrior, and a vindictive enemy of the Americans.

1835. On the 28th of December, Major Dade, who was marching to relieve the post of Fort King, was suddenly attacked, and himself and whole company, consisting of one hundred and twelve men, massacred. Three only of the company escaped, severely wounded. Meanwhile, a detachment of Florida volunteers having joined the regulars, General Clinch crossed the Withlacoochee River, and was fiercely assailed by Osceola and his numerous warriors. Their attack was gallantly repelled by the Americans. The battle took place December 31st.

1836. 9. General Scott was now sent to Florida to take command of the troops. On the 29th of February, General Gaines encountered the Seminoles, when an indecisive battle took place. General Scott marched through Florida, without meeting any large body of the enemy. They were concealed in thickets and swamps inaccessible to regular troops. The Treasury Department issued what is called a "Specie Circular," requiring gold and silver coin in payment for public lands. The national debt having been paid off and extinguished, upwards of thirty-seven millions had accumulated in the Treasury. Congress passed a "Distribution Act," dividing the surplus revenue among the different states, in proportion to the respective population of each.

10. During this year, Arkansas was admitted into the Union. The first settlement in this state was made at Arkansas Post, on the Arkansas River, in 1685. This state formed a part of Louisiana at the time of its cession to the United States. In 1812 it constituted part of the Territory of Missouri, and remained so till 1819, when a distinct territorial government was framed, and it was then called Arkansas. James Madison, the fourth President of the United States died this year, at the advanced age of eighty-five.

1837. 11. Michigan was admitted as a state during the month of January. This state was first settled by Jesuit missionaries, at the Sault St. Marie, in 1668. Other settlements were made, but the first permanent settlement was that made at Detroit, by De la Motte Cadillac, a Jesuit missionary, and a French colony in June, 1701. Michigan formed part of the North-West Territory. In 1805 it was erected into a territorial government. Martin Van Buren, of New York, was elected President, and Richard M. Johnson, of Kentucky, Vice-President.

Questions on Andrew Jackson's Administration.—1. What circumstances combined to make the President's position one of excitement?

2. What is said of James Monroe? Where and when was he wounded in battle? What offices had he filled?

3. What war broke out in 1832? Where were the Indians defeated, and who was taken prisoner? Who was now sent to take command of the troops?

4. What did General Scott do in the beginning of July? What prevented the troops from reaching the seat of war? How many died of the cholera? What did General Scott do? What land was ceded to the United States by the Sac and Fox tribes of Indians? The Winnebagoes?

5. What is said of the recharter of the United States Bank? What declaration was made by a convention in South Carolina? What did the President declare in his proclamation? How was the difficulty removed? Who were elected President and Vice-President?

6. What caused great excitement? To what did the President call the attention of Congress?

7. Why did the President recommend vigorous measures towards France? How was the difficulty settled?

8. How did the Seminole War commence? What was the character of Osceola? What occurred on the 28th of December? Describe the battle of December 31st.

9. Who was sent in 1836 to take command in Florida? What

is said of General Gaines? What was required by the "Specie Circular?" What is said of the National Debt? The Distribution Act?

10. When was Arkansas admitted into the Union? When was the first settlement made? What did this state form part of? In 1812? In 1819? When and at what age did James Madison die?

11. When was Michigan admitted as a state? When, by whom, and where, was it first settled? When and by whom was Detroit settled? What did Michigan form a part of? Who was elected President? Vice-President?

MARTIN VAN BUREN'S ADMINISTRATION.

1837. 1. Soon after the accession of Mr. Van Buren, a commercial crisis took place. All the banks suspended specie payments in May, and the government itself was seriously embarrassed, and could not discharge its own pecuniary obligations. An extra session of Congress was convened early in September, and passed several bills for the relief of government, the most important of which, was one for the issue of treasury notes, not to exceed ten millions of dollars.

2. The Seminole War in Florida was still carried on. During the month of March, a number of chiefs came to General Jessup's camp, and signed a treaty, by which it was stipulated that the Indians should remove beyond the Mississippi. This treaty was soon violated, and the Indians renewed their devastations. In October, Osceola, who came to the American camp under a flag of truce, was seized by order of General Jessup, and placed in confinement. He was afterwards removed to Fort Moultrie, where he died.

1837. 3. On the 25th of December, a severe battle was fought at Lake Okeechobee, in which the Indians were defeated. Colonel Zachary Taylor commanded the Americans in this engagement. An insurrection broke out in Canada this year, which threatened to involve the United States in war with Great Britain. Many American citizens on the frontier sympathized with the Canadians in their opposition to government, and furnished them with arms and other munitions of war. A steamboat called the *Caroline*, plying between Schlosser, on the American side, and Navy Island, belonging to the British, where the insurgents had collected, was seized by the British while lying at Schlosser, set on fire, and sent over the cataract (December 29th).

1838. 4. This event occasioned great excitement throughout the country, and the government sent General Scott to enforce neutrality, and to call out the militia, if necessary, for the defence of the frontier. The President issued his proclamation, requiring all Americans to desist from their efforts in behalf of the Canadians, and declaring that they forfeited the protection of the laws by the invasion of Canada. Finally the British colonial government captured or dispersed the insurgents, and this put an end to the excitement on the frontier.

1840. 5. During the session of Congress, the Sub-Treasury Bill became a law, and an appropriation was made towards the survey of the disputed boundary line between Maine and the British province of New Brunswick. At the presidential election, William Henry Harrison, of Ohio, was chosen President, and John Tyler, of Virginia, Vice-President.

Questions on Martin Van Buren's Administration.—1. What important act was passed at an extra meeting of Congress?

2. What did the Seminole chiefs do in March? What is said of the treaty? Of Osceola?

3. What is said of the battle of December 25th? Who was commander of the American forces? What circumstance threatened war between Great Britain and the United States? What is said of the steamboat Caroline?

4. Why did the government send General Scott to the frontier? What was required by the President's proclamation?

5. What act was passed? What appropriation was made? Who were elected President and Vice-President?



HARRISON'S AND TYLER'S ADMINISTRATIONS.

1841. 1. General Harrison took the oath of office on the 4th of March, in the presence of a large assemblage. He soon after issued a proclamation for a session of Congress, to commence on the 31st of May. But he never lived to see it assemble, nor to carry out the measures of his government. One month after his inauguration he died, expressing with his last breath an ardent wish that his principles of government should be carried out by his successor.

2. On the death of General Harrison Mr. Tyler became the acting President. On the 5th of April he took the oath of office, and entered on the discharge of his duties. The extra session of Congress commenced on the 31st of May, and several important measures were brought forward. The sub-treasury was repealed, a general bankrupt law passed, and bills for establishing a Bank of the United States were also passed by both houses, but vetoed by the President.

1842. 3. The controversy which had for a long time existed between the United States and Great

1842. Britain, respecting the north-eastern boundary, was put at rest during this year, by a treaty agreed upon by the American and English commissioners, Daniel Webster and Lord Ashburton. The Americans claimed, according to the treaty of 1783, the boundary as extending from "a line drawn due north, from the source of St. Croix River to the high lands, and along the said high lands to the Connecticut River." The British claimed from a line intersecting the state from east to west, and cutting off from the Americans almost all the tract lying north of the 46th parallel of north latitude. By mutual concessions agreed upon, a new line was run, which is now satisfactory to both nations.

4. In Rhode Island some difficulties occurred of so serious a character that it was feared they would lead to civil war. The old charter, granted by Charles II., in 1663, was in full force, the government of the state being administered under it. A number of citizens wished to abrogate the charter and adopt a state constitution. Under the name of the "Suffrage Party," they adopted a new constitution, chose a governor, and elected a legislature. The majority, called the "Law and Order Party," opposed this movement, insisted that any change in the fundamental charter of the state must be made by the full concurrence of a majority of the people, and denounced the suffrage party as guilty of high treason. Government sent troops to preserve the peace, and the suffrage party abandoned the contest. A new constitution has since then been adopted.

1844. 5. The President was suddenly deprived of two members of his cabinet by a dreadful catastrophe. This occurred on board the government vessel, Princeton, while on an excursion down the Potomac. The President and a number of distinguished persons were on board.

1844. During the trial of a large cannon, which had received the name of the "Peacemaker," it burst, and instantly killed Mr. Upshur, Secretary of State, and Mr. Gilmore, Secretary of the Navy. John C. Calhoun, of South Carolina, was soon after appointed to supply the vacancy occasioned by the death of Mr. Upshur.

1845. 6. In January a joint resolution for the annexation of Texas to the United States was adopted; and in March, Florida was admitted as a state. The earliest permanent settlement in this state was made by the Spaniards, at St. Augustine, in 1565. Florida continued to be a Spanish province till 1763, when it was ceded to the British government. In 1783 it reverted to Spain, and remained in her possession until its cession to the United States. In 1822 it was erected into a territorial government, and so continued until its admission as one of the states of the Union.

Questions on Harrison's and Tyler's Administrations.—1. What proclamation was issued by President Harrison? Did he live to see it assemble? When did he die? What did he express in his last moments?

2. Who now became acting President? When did he take the oath of office? What was done at the session of Congress? What bills were vetoed by the President?

3. By whom was a treaty to settle the north-eastern boundary agreed upon? What was claimed by the Americans? By the British? How was it settled?

4. What constitution was still in force in Rhode Island? What did the "Suffrage Party" do? The "Law and Order Party"? Why did government send troops? What has since been adopted?

5. Describe the accident on board the Princeton, and state who were killed. Who was appointed Secretary of State?

6. What joint resolution was adopted by Congress? When was Florida admitted as a state? When and where was the earliest settlement made? Give other particulars of its history.

JAMES K. POLK'S ADMINISTRATION.

1. James K. Polk, of Tennessee, and George M. Dallas, of Pennsylvania, having received a large majority of the votes of electors for President and Vice-President, entered on the duties of their offices March 4th. The republic of Texas accepted the terms of the resolutions adopted by Congress, and, by annexation, became United States' territory. As the Mexican government threatened an invasion of the territory, General Taylor, with a body of forces, was sent into Texas, and Commodore Stockton, with a naval squadron, into the Gulf of Mexico, and diplomatic relations were suspended between the two governments. General Jackson, aged seventy-eight, died at his residence, the Hermitage, in June.

2. In December, Texas, having formed a constitution, was admitted as a state into the Union. The country embraced within the limits of Texas was claimed by the Spaniards as part of Mexico, and by the French as constituting a portion of Louisiana. In 1685 La Salle, with a French colony destined for the mouth of the Mississippi, mistook their way, and, sailing far past their destination, landed at the Bay of Matagorda. Here they established the infant colony, and France never relinquished her claim to Texas while Louisiana remained in her possession. But La Salle was murdered, and the colony broken up by hostile Indians. In 1690 the Spanish established a settlement at St. Antonio de Bexar, and maintained possession of the territory.

3. After Mexico had thrown off the Spanish yoke, the government invited and encouraged emigration. Large numbers of the citizens of the United States settled in the

territory, and petitioned to be received into the Mexican Confederacy as a sovereign state. This petition was rejected, and such a series of wrongs were perpetrated against the colonists of Texas as compelled them to take up arms and fight for their lives and liberties. At the battle of San Jacinto the Mexicans were totally routed, and General Santa Anna, the Dictator of Mexico, taken prisoner. He entered into an agreement of peace, and the acknowledgment of the independence of Texas. After his restoration to liberty he disavowed all treaties made while he was a prisoner, and declared he would suffer a thousand deaths, rather than place in jeopardy the integrity of his country's territory.

4. The battle of San Jacinto, however, caused a cessation of active hostilities in Texas. In March, 1836, a Declaration of Independence was adopted, and signed by all her delegates in convention. The same year a Constitution was adopted, and her independence was acknowledged by the United States in 1837, by France in 1839, and by England in 1840. Texas continued as a separate independent republic until its annexation to the United States, and its admission as one of the states of the Union.

1846. 5. Congress, at this session, established the sub-treasury, repealed the tariff law of 1842, and substituted another with a much lower rate of duties. The governments of Great Britain and the United States had both claimed the territory of Oregon; the American claim, made by the President, being to the latitude of fifty-four degrees forty minutes, the British to the Columbia River and its head waters. In June the boundary was agreed upon by the British and American commissioners, Richard Packenham and James Buchanan. The forty-ninth degree of north latitude to the Straits of Juan de Fuca, giving to

1846. the British the undivided territory of Vancouver's Island, constituted the provisions of the treaty.

6. Iowa, during the year, was admitted into the Union as an independent state. This territory was first visited by the French Jesuits in 1673, but no settlements were made by them. The country was included in the purchase of Louisiana, but remained in Indian occupancy until 1832, when the Indian title was extinguished, and it was ceded to the United States. The first settlement was made at Burlington, in 1833, by emigrants from the Eastern States.

7. Early in March, General Taylor moved his army from Corpus Christi to the Rio Grande, opposite the city of Matamoras, where he built a fort. He had previously fortified Point Isabel, and left it garrisoned. The Mexican troops now commenced active hostilities. On the 10th of April, Colonel Cross was murdered, and, on the 18th, Lieutenant Porter, with a small body of men, were taken prisoners, and butchered. On the 24th, Captain Thornton, with a party of dragoons, consisting of sixty-three men, became engaged with a large body of Mexicans, in which sixteen were killed and wounded, and the others compelled to surrender.

8. General Arista informed General Taylor that he considered hostilities commenced, and that he should prosecute them vigorously. General Taylor received information that large forces of the Mexicans were crossing the Rio Grande, and started with his main force for the protection of Point Isabel, leaving Major Brown in command of the fort, then in an unfinished condition. Soon after his departure, the Mexicans at Matamoras commenced a cannonade on the fort, which the garrison returned. During this engagement Major Brown was killed, and the post so gallantly defended by him was named Fort Brown.

1846. 9. On General Taylor's return from Point Isabel, May 8th, he was met at Palo Alto by the Mexicans, drawn up in order of battle. The enemy's force amounted to six thousand men, the army of General Taylor to two thousand three hundred. The battle lasted five hours, when the enemy fell back. The American loss in this battle was four men killed, and three officers and thirty-nine men wounded. Among the wounded were Major Ringgold and Captain Page, who died soon afterwards.

10. After the battle of Palo Alto, General Arista took a strong position at Resaca de la Palma. General Taylor resumed his march on the afternoon of the 9th, and in two hours came up to the enemy. The action commenced by the firing of the Mexican artillery, which was promptly returned by Ridgely's battery. As the Mexican battery proved to be very destructive, he directed Captain May to capture it. This he accomplished; his dragoons cut through the enemy, seized the cannon, and captured General La Vega. The infantry now charged the Mexican line, which broke, and the enemy fled with the utmost precipitation.

11. A message from the President to Congress having declared "that by the act of the Republic of Mexico, a war existed between that government and the United States," that body authorized the President to call into the field fifty thousand volunteers, and made an appropriation for the purpose of carrying on the war (May 13th). Soon after the battle of Resaca de la Palma, General Taylor with his army crossed the Rio Grande, and took possession of Matamoras. The Mexican towns of Reinosá, Meir, Revilla, and Camargo, surrendered without resistance.

12. The general government and the officers of the army were now making preparations for carrying the war into the interior of Mexico. General Taylor being reinforced,

1846. early in September left Camargo, and marched against Monterey. On the 19th the army encamped near the city, and prepared for an immediate attack. Monterey was defended by forty pieces of cannon, and more than nine thousand troops; it also possessed strong natural defences, and massive fortifications.

13. It being deemed advisable to gain possession of the exterior defences and fortifications of the city, General Worth was sent to capture the forts on the Saltillo road and the Bishop's Palace. This was successfully accomplished on the 22d, and the town was under the command of Worth's artillery. Other divisions of the army, led by Generals Butler and Twiggs, made an attack on the opposite side of the city, into which they effected an entrance, and advanced by burrowing or digging through from house to house. On the 24th, General Ampudia offered to capitulate, and terms being agreed upon, the Mexican troops evacuated Monterey, and General Taylor took possession of it. The battle and capture of Monterey ended the campaign of the Rio Grande, in which the American arms had been completely successful.

14. Contemporary with these events is the capture of California by Colonel Fremont and Commodores Sloat and Stockton, the occupation of New Mexico by General Kearney, and the surrender of Tampico, Frontiera, and Tabasco to Commodore Connor. Colonel Doniphan left Santa Fé for Chihuahua with eight hundred men. On his way he was attacked by a Mexican force at Bracitor. A well-directed fire from the Americans put the enemy to flight, and Doniphan pursued his long and wearisome journey, which ended by the capture of Chihuahua.

1847. 15. General Taylor remained at Monterey for several months after its capture. During this time

1847. General Scott had been sent to Mexico, where he arrived about the 1st of January, and was joined by Generals Pillow, Twiggs, Quitman, and Worth, with detachments from General Taylor's army, for the proposed attack on Vera Cruz. General Santa Anna, with an army of twenty-two thousand men, was at San Luis Potosi, and it was supposed from his movements he intended to advance with his whole army. General Taylor resolved to give him battle. For this purpose, leaving fifteen hundred men at Monterey, he marched to Saltillo, and on the 4th of February encamped at Agua Nueva, where he remained until the 21st. Learning that Santa Anna was advancing against him, he withdrew to a strong mountain pass called Buena Vista, where, having formed his army in battle array, he awaited the approach of the enemy. A summons to surrender was despatched to General Taylor, granting him an hour's time for consideration. General Taylor promptly declined acceding to the summons, and the following morning the battle commenced by an attack on the part of the Mexicans. The battle continued through the entire day, and though the enemy gained partial successes from their overwhelming numbers, they were finally repulsed, and left the field. This victory ended the war in the northern part of Mexico.

16. General Scott effected a landing with his army near Vera Cruz, on the 9th of March. The city was invested, batteries erected, and, on the 22d, General Scott summoned the governor to surrender. The proposition was rejected, and the batteries opened a deadly and destructive fire, which continued without intermission until the 26th, when the Mexican general made proposals to surrender. Articles of capitulation were signed on the following day, and the city of Vera Cruz, as well as the strong castle of San Juan d'Ulloa, were taken possession of by the American forces.

1847. 17. Soon after the capture of Vera Cruz, Lieutenant Hunter captured Alvarado, on the Gulf of Mexico, and in April Commodore Perry gained possession of Tuspan. General Worth being temporarily appointed governor of Vera Cruz, the army on the 8th of April commenced its march towards the city of Mexico. General Santa Anna, defeated at Buena Vista, had now fortified the heights of Cerro Gordo, and, at the head of fifteen thousand men, looked down on the advancing Americans.

18. General Scott, who knew that an attack in front would be useless, ordered a road to be cut to the left of the heights ascending in the rear of the Mexican forts. In the night heavy cannon were taken to the heights, and opened a destructive fire on the enemy on the morning of the 18th. The strong fortress of Cerro Gordo was taken by storm, and the Mexicans were totally routed. Santa Anna escaped and reached Jalapa, closely pursued by the victorious army.

19. The following day the Americans entered the town of Jalapa, and on the 22d they took the fortress of Perote. On the 15th of May, La Puebla* was in the occupancy of the American army, and became their head-quarters until the following August. War and disease had thinned their ranks, and it was necessary that the soldiers should have a season of rest after their severe labors. Reinforcements also were requisite to enable them to complete the work of conquest. The government had in the mean time sent an agent (Mr. Trist) to make overtures of peace to the Mexican government.

20. General Scott, being reinforced by fresh troops sent by way of Vera Cruz, left Puebla early in August on his

* Puebla de los Angeles, "City of the Angels."

1847. march towards the capital. The route led the army across the Cordilleras, from whose lofty heights they looked down on the vast plain of Mexico. No enemy opposed their march until the 19th, when they arrived in front of the strong fortress of St. Antonio, with the heights of Churubusco on the right, covered with cannon, and close by the fortified camp of Contreras.

21. Early on the morning of the 20th, General Smith* marched to the attack on Contreras. General Valencia was at the head of six thousand Mexicans, and General Santa Anna stood ready to support him with a powerful force. When the arrangements of the Americans were completed, they made an impetuous attack, dashed into the intrenchments, and drove out the enemy, in the short space of seventeen minutes. St. Antonio was evacuated shortly after this battle.

22. Churubusco was the next point of attack. This consisted of a strong breastwork at the head of a bridge, a church strongly fortified, strong military outworks, and a powerful army, commanded personally by Santa Anna. The battle commenced early in the afternoon, and continued with unabated fury for three hours, when Santa Anna abandoned the field, and with his army fled to the capital.

23. The day succeeding these fiercely-contended battles, propositions were made by Santa Anna for an armistice. This was mutually agreed upon, but its provisions were shamefully violated by the Mexican general. On the 7th of September, General Scott declared the armistice to be at an end, and hostilities again commenced. On the 8th, an attack was made by General Worth on El Molinos del Rey (the King's Mills). The troops were at first repulsed,

* General Persifer F. Smith, of Louisiana.

1847. but returning to the charge they fought desperately for an hour, when the Mexicans were totally routed.

24. On the 12th, Chapultepec was attacked by a heavy cannonade and bombardment. On the 13th, the besiegers commenced a furious assault, which resulted in the capture of the castle, and the pursuit of the flying enemy to the very gates of Mexico. Santa Anna and the officers of government fled that night, and the next day (September 14th) General Scott directed Generals Worth and Quitman to enter the city, and plant the American flag



GENERAL SCOTT'S ENTRY INTO MEXICO.

on the summit of the National Palace. General Scott then with the main body of the army made his triumphal but peaceful entry into the heart of that capital so renowned in American, Spanish, and Mexican history.

25. The occupation of the capital, and the flight of Santa Anna, put an end to the Mexican War; for although some

1847. unimportant skirmishes occurred soon after, and an insurrection broke out in the city, the Mexicans were not able to oppose an effectual resistance to the victorious Americans. On the 2d of February, 1848,

1848. a treaty of peace was signed by Mr. Trist, on the part of the United States, and commissioners appointed by the Mexican Congress. This treaty, with some modifications, was adopted by both governments, and on the 19th of June the proclamation of the President announced that peace existed between Mexico and the United States,

26. By this treaty, New Mexico and California were transferred to the United States. All captured posts were to be given up, and fifteen millions of dollars were to be paid to the Mexican government for the ceded territory. On the 12th of June, our army left the city of Mexico, and soon after, all the posts which had been held by the American soldiery were evacuated. The discovery of gold in California led to an immense emigration to that distant region and its settlement as a territory by adventurers from the Atlantic and Western States. John Quincy Adams was stricken down with illness in the House of Representatives, and died the following day.

27. During the session of Congress, Wisconsin was admitted as a state into the Union (May 29th), being the thirtieth in number. Wisconsin was first settled by the French at Green Bay in 1690. Oregon and Minnesota were erected into territorial governments soon after the admission of Wisconsin. The presidential election held this year resulted in the election of Zachary Taylor for President. Millard Fillmore was elected Vice-President, and Mr. Polk's administration terminated on the 3d of

1849. March, 1849. He retired to his residence, where he died on the 15th of June.

Questions on James K. Polk's Administration.—1. Who had been elected President and Vice-President? What is said of Texas? What did Mexico threaten? Where was General Taylor sent? Commodore Stockton? In what year and where did General Jackson die?

2. When was Texas admitted as a state? By what nations had Texas been claimed? When and by whom was Texas first settled? Where and by whom was a settlement made in 1690?

3. Give an account of the settlement of Texas by citizens of the United States. Battle of San Jacinto.

4. Give a further account of the history of Texas.

5. What was done by Congress in 1846? How far to the north did the President claim Oregon? How far south was it claimed by the British? How was it settled by the commissioners?

6. When was Iowa admitted? When and by whom was the country first visited? When, where, and by whom was the first settlement made?

7. What movement was made by General Taylor in March? What place had been previously fortified? What did the Mexican troops do? Give the particulars.

8. What did General Taylor now do? In whose charge did he leave the fort? What was done by the Mexicans at Matamoras? Who was killed in this engagement?

9. On General Taylor's return from Point Isabel, where was a Mexican force drawn up to oppose him? What was the number of the respective armies? Describe the battle, and the American loss.

10. What did General Arista do after the battle? Describe the battle of Resaca de la Palma. Who was captured? What is said of the Mexican line?

11. What communication did the President make to Congress? What did Congress do? What did General Taylor do after the battle of Resaca de la Palma? What Mexican towns surrendered?

12. What did General Taylor do in September? How was Monterey defended?

13. What was General Worth directed to do? Who attacked the opposite side of the city? What did General Ampudia then propose? What did this battle put an end to?

14. By whom was California captured? New Mexico? What places were taken by Commodore Connor? Describe the expedition of Colonel Doniphan.

15. When did General Scott arrive in Mexico? By whom was he joined? Where was General Santa Anna? What did General Taylor now do? At what place did he await the enemy? Describe the battle of Buena Vista. What did this victory put an end to?

16. When did General Scott land near Vera Cruz? When did the attack on the city commence? What proposal was made by the Mexican general? What was surrendered?

17. What ports were captured by Lieutenant Hunter? By Commodore Perry? When did the army march towards the city of Mexico? What did General Santa Anna do?

18. What was ordered by General Scott? What was done in the night? On the 18th of April? Give the result of the battle of Cerro Gordo. To what place did Santa Anna escape?

19. What did the Americans do on the 19th? On the 22d? What became the head-quarters of the army? Who had been sent by the government to make overtures of peace?

20. When did General Scott leave Puebla? Describe the route. Near to what fortified places did the army arrive on the 19th of August?

21. Describe the attack on Contreras. Name the generals engaged. What is said of St. Antonio?

22. Of what did Churubusco consist? Name the other defences. Describe the battle. What is said of Santa Anna?

23. What was agreed upon the day after the battle? What was declared by General Scott on the 7th of September? What took place on the 8th? Describe the battle.

24. What place was attacked on the 12th? Describe the battle of Chapultepec. What was done by Santa Anna and the officers of government? Who were sent by General Scott to take possession of the city? What did General Scott do on the 15th of September?

25. When was a treaty of peace signed by commissioners? When was peace proclaimed?

26. State the conditions of the treaty. When did the American army leave Mexico? What led to the settlement of California?

27. When was Wisconsin admitted as a state? When and by whom was Wisconsin settled? What were erected into territorial governments? Who were elected President and Vice-President? When did Mr. Polk's administration terminate? When did he die?

TAYLOR'S AND FILLMORE'S ADMINISTRATIONS.

1849. 1. On the 5th of March, President Taylor entered on the duties of his office. The absorbing topic which occupied the attention of citizens at the time was the gold found in immense quantities in California, and a continued tide of emigration was pouring to the golden region. A convention of delegates assembled at Monterey on the 1st of September, and adopted a state constitution, which excluded slavery. This constitution was laid before 1850. Congress at its next session, and produced great excitement in the discussions which followed. The article relating to slavery engendered the strongest sectional feelings, and many predicted the dissolution of the Union.

2. In the midst of the tumult Mr. Clay, the distinguished Senator from Kentucky, suggested a plan of compromise. The whole matter was referred to a committee who reported a bill containing a number of provisions. It was discussed for four months in Congress, and its respective measures separately considered and adopted. The measures recommended were, 1st. That California should be admitted into the Union as a free state, having its territorial extent from Oregon to the Mexican possessions; 2d. That the country east of California, containing the Mormon settlements near the Great Salt Lake, should be erected into a territory called Utah, without mention of slavery; 3d. That New Mexico should be erected into a territory without any stipulations respecting slavery, and that ten millions of dollars should be paid to Texas from the Federal treasury, in purchase of her claims; 4th. That the slave trade in the District of Columbia should be abolished; 5th. That an efficient law

1850. should be passed for the arrest and return of fugitive slaves.

3. While these measures were under discussion, a deep and sorrowful sensation was produced throughout the nation by the death of the President, after a short illness. His death took place on the 9th of July, and, agreeably to the Constitution, Millard Fillmore took the oath of office on the day following, and became President of the United States. The compromise measures, which had been so long under discussion, were adopted; among which was the admission of California as the thirty-first state of the Union. Its settlement and growth has been rapid beyond a precedent, and it gives to the Union an empire on the shores of the Pacific. California was first settled at Los Angeles, by the Spaniards, in 1769.

1851. 4. In the autumn of 1851 twenty-one millions of acres were purchased by the United States government from the Indian tribes of Minnesota. Another tract was soon after purchased from the Snow Sioux, and the payments for Indian lands amounted to three millions of dollars. Much interest was manifested by the visit of Lewis Kossuth, the exiled governor of Hungary. He arrived in New York on the 4th of December, and was received with the highest marks of respect by the public authorities of all our principal cities. He wished to enlist the aid and sympathy of our government for his downtrodden country, but the policy always pursued here forbade any interference in the public affairs of foreign nations. Kossuth, however, received the warmest sympathy of all classes, and material aid from private contributions.

1852. 5. Two distinguished statesmen and eloquent orators died in the year 1852. One was Henry Clay, who had been for more than fifty years in public life,

and, at the time of his decease, represented the state
1852. of Kentucky in the United States Senate. The other death which the nation mourned was that of Daniel Webster, the Secretary of State, and who, like Mr. Clay, had always eloquently advocated and upheld the honor and interests of his country.

6. After the settlements on the Pacific coast had assumed great national importance, the government felt the necessity of commercial intercourse with Japan, and fitted out an expedition under command of Commodore M. C. Perry, for the purpose of soliciting from the Emperor of Japan the negotiation of a treaty of commerce and friendship between the two nations. The mission was successful, and the most friendly feelings exist between the two governments. At the presidential election held this year, Franklin Pierce, of New Hampshire, was elected President, and William
1853. R. King, of Alabama, Vice-President. A new territory, called Washington, taken from Oregon, was formed, and the bill became a law on the 2d of March, the close of Mr. Fillmore's administration.

Questions on Taylor's and Fillmore's Administrations.—1. What is said of the constitution of the state of California? Of the article excluding slavery?

2. What did Mr. Clay do? What were the stipulations of the compromise act?

3. What sorrowful event took place? When did the President die, and who succeeded him? What is said of the admission of California? When and by whom was it first settled?

4. What purchases were made by government?

5. What is said of Henry Clay? Daniel Webster?

6. For what purpose was an expedition sent to Japan? What is said of the mission and its result? Who were elected President and Vice-President? What new territory was formed?

FRANKLIN PIERCE'S ADMINISTRATION.

1853. 1. President Pierce took the oath of office on the 4th of March, 1853, and entered on the duties of President. Mr. King never took his seat as Vice-President. His ill health led him to seek the warmer climate of Cuba, where he spent the winter. He died April 18th, soon after his return to his residence in Alabama.

2. Some dispute occurred between rival claimants for the Mesilla Valley. It was claimed by New Mexico as constituting a part of its southern boundary, and it was also claimed by the Mexican government as part of the state of Chihuahua. The governor of the latter state took military possession of the disputed territory, and it was feared a collision would take place between the two governments. But the difficulty was adjusted by a treaty, by which the Mesilla Valley and the tract of country now constituting the territory of Arizona was conveyed to the United States. By this treaty the United States agreed to pay to Mexico the sum of twenty millions of dollars.

1854. 3. In January a bill was introduced into Congress proposing to erect the immense region west of the Missouri, to the Rocky Mountains, into two districts, to be called Nebraska and Kansas, and repealing the Missouri Compromise, giving to the people of each territory the right to be admitted into the Union either as free or slave states. The discussion of this bill led to intense excitement, but it finally passed both houses and became a law.

4. At this time war was waged against Russia by Great Britain, France, and Turkey, and an incident occurred which threatened for a time the interruption of the ami-

1854. cable relations which existed between England and America. It was evident that enlistments of men to aid the British in the war in the Crimea were made by the sanction of Mr. Crampton, the British minister. The government requested that Mr. Crampton might be recalled, but several months having elapsed before the demand was complied with, the President dismissed the minister and the consuls at New York, Philadelphia, and Cincinnati.

1855. 5. The repeal of the Missouri Compromise opened the territory of the United States to settlers from all sections of the Union. An immense number of avowed anti-slavery persons at once rushed to Kansas, and founded a number of towns. The pro-slavery men also went in large numbers from Missouri, and a reign of terror and civil war raged for more than a year in that ill-fated territory. The events have been of such recent occurrence, and the statements so varying and contradictory, it is not possible, at this time, to write a true and impartial history which shall render justice to the contestants for rule in Kansas.

1856. 6. The presidential campaign excited much interest throughout the country. Three candidates were nominated:—Millard Fillmore by the American party, James Buchanan by the Democratic party, and John C. Fremont by the Republicans. The electoral election was held November 4th, and resulted in the choice of James Buchanan, of Pennsylvania, for President, and John C. Breckenridge, of Kentucky, for Vice-President.

Questions on Franklin Pierce's Administration.—1. What is said of Mr. King, the Vice-President?

2. Who were claimants of the Mesilla Valley? How was the difficulty settled? What did the United States agree to pay to Mexico?

3. What did the bill introduced into Congress propose to do? What did it repeal? What is said of the discussion of this bill?

4. By whose sanction were enlistments for the British army made? What diplomatic agents were dismissed in consequence?

5. To what territory was there a rush of settlers? What prevailed in Kansas?

6. What three candidates were nominated for the Presidency? Who was elected? Who was elected Vice-President?

JAMES BUCHANAN'S ADMINISTRATION.

1857. 1. Mr. Buchanan took the oath of office and entered on its duties on the 4th of March, 1857, and Mr. Breckenridge also took his seat as President of the Senate. For some time a threatening state of affairs existed in Utah. The Mormons, who were the settlers of that territory, refused obedience to the laws of the United States, or to submit to any authority other than that derived from Brigham Young, the head of the Mormon church, and the acting governor of the territory. By order of the President, Colonel Cummings, of Missouri, was appointed governor, and a strong body of troops were sent to enforce his authority, and suppress rebellion.

2. After a toilsome march, the troops reached Salt Lake City. No opposition was offered to the entrance
1858. of the troops, but many of the inhabitants left their homes, and moved to the southern portion of the territory. Commissioners were sent by the Federal government to induce the Mormons to return, promising the withdrawal of the troops. These terms were acceded to, and the difficulty terminated.

3. The President recommended to Congress the admission

1858. of Kansas as a state into the Union, and assent to the constitution adopted at Lecompton. This was strongly objected to, on the ground that the constitution had never been submitted to a popular vote, and that it was at variance with the wishes of the majority. In the Senate a small majority voted in favor of the bill, but it was rejected in the House. A substitute was adopted, to which the Senate refused its assent. A committee of conference was then appointed by both houses, and a bill reported by them was passed by both branches of Congress, and approved by the President, but rejected by the people of Kansas, at an election held in the territory.

4. During this session of Congress, Minnesota was admitted into the Union. The growth and settlement of this new state has been very rapid, having till recently been a hunting-ground for the Indian, and a habitation for the wild beast of the forest. It was first settled at St. Paul, in 1846, by emigrants from the Eastern States.

1859. 5. The most important act passed by Congress at the present session, was the admission of Oregon into the Union. The bill for its admission had been passed by the Senate at its last session, but was not acted on by the House until the 12th of February. Oregon was first settled at Astoria, in 1811, by emigrants from the Eastern States.

6. The debates consequent on the Kansas bill effected a division among the members of Congress. One portion opposed the admission of Kansas under the Lecompton Constitution, because of its slavery proclivities, and because the will of the people had not been tested with regard to their wishes on the subject. The others considered that injustice had been done to the South by the rejection of slavery, as introduced by actual settlers, and their votes were for the Lecompton Constitution.

1860 7. One of the most prominent events of 1860 was the official visit of the Japanese ambassadors.

They arrived at San Francisco, and thence proceeded to Washington, Baltimore, Philadelphia, and New York, from whence they embarked for Japan, highly gratified by their visit to the United States. Another pleasing event arose from a visit paid by the Prince of Wales, who made quite an extensive journey through Canada and several states of the Union. In every part of the United States which he visited he was received with respect, and much attention was paid him by the corporate bodies of our principal cities.

8. Four candidates were nominated for the Presidency, viz.: Stephen A. Douglas, of Illinois; Abraham Lincoln, of Illinois; John C. Breckenridge, of Kentucky; and John Bell, of Tennessee. A very exciting campaign followed the nominations, and great anxiety was manifested in the result. By the returns, Mr. Lincoln was elected President, and Hannibal Hamlin, of Maine, Vice-President. Some of the leading politicians in the Southern States denounced the election as sectional, and hostile to the rights of the South, and threatened to withdraw from the Union.

9. This threat was first carried into effect by South Carolina. On the 20th of December, that state, by an act adopted in convention, seceded from the government of the United States, declared her own state sovereignty, hoisted the palmetto flag, and assumed an attitude of hostility to the general government. By this measure she dishonored the "Flag of the Union," the "Stars and Stripes," which once waved over her battle-fields of Eutaw Springs, Cowpens, Hobkirk's Hill, Charleston, and Sullivan's Island.

10. At the time that South Carolina set the example of secession, Fort Moultrie, in Charleston Harbor, was garrisoned by Major Robert Anderson and a small body of troops

1860. Convinced that he could not defend this post, he withdrew his forces to Fort Sumter, spiking the guns and burning the gun-carriages of the deserted fort. Soon after the evacuation of Fort Moultrie, it was taken possession of by the troops of South Carolina, as also Castle Pinckney. General Cass, Secretary of State, had urged the necessity of sending troops to keep possession of the forts in the seceding state. This the President refused to do, in consequence of which General Cass resigned his position, and retired from the cares of government.

1861. 11. Mr. Cobb, Secretary of the Treasury, and Mr. Floyd, Secretary of War, resigned their offices from sympathy with the secessionists. Postmaster-General Holt, of Kentucky, was appointed acting Secretary of War, and Mr. Dix, of New York, Secretary of the Treasury, which departments they filled with marked ability during the remaining part of Mr. Buchanan's administration.

12. The month of January was distinguished for a series of aggressive acts against the general government. In Georgia, Forts Pulaski and Jackson were seized by order of the state authorities. The United States revenue cutter at Savannah was fired into and captured; and the Arsenal at Augusta seized by the state troops. In North Carolina, Fort Macon, the forts at Wilmington, and the United States Arsenal at Fayetteville, were seized by the state troops. In Alabama, the United States Arsenal at Mobile was taken, also Fort Morgan, at the mouth of Mobile Bay. South Carolina seized the United States Arsenal, Custom-House, and Post-Office in Charleston, erected new fortifications on Sullivan's and Johnson's Islands, and besieged Major Anderson and his garrison in Fort Sumter.

13. Conventions were in session in several of the discontented states of the Union, which by their respective acts

1861. proclaimed that the states they represented no longer owed allegiance to the United States government, and declared their secession from it. Mississippi seceded on the 9th of January, Florida and Alabama on the 11th, Georgia on the 19th, and Louisiana on the 26th. The steamer "Star of the West," sent to carry troops and provisions to Fort Sumter, was fired on by the secessionists in the harbor of Charleston, and obliged to return without effecting her mission.

14. Mr. Thompson, of Mississippi, Secretary of the Interior, resigned his position in the cabinet, dissatisfied at the determination of the President to maintain the rights of the government. The aggressions on the Federal government were still continued. In New Orleans, the United States Mint and Custom-House, and Marine Hospital, were seized by the state authorities. In Florida, Fort Barrancas and the Pensacola Navy Yard were seized. Lieutenant Slemmer, in command, withdrew to Fort Pickens, which he held against the forces of the enemy.

15. On the 29th of January, Kansas was admitted into the Union as the thirty-fourth state. Its constitution prohibits slavery. This state was formed out of the country formerly known as the Indian Territory, and was settled by emigrants from other sections, principally, however, from New England. It was long the arena of factious strife between the advocates of slavery and its opposers. The latter, however, outnumbered the former, and, after much delay and opposition, succeeded in having their constitution concurred in by Congress, and their territory erected into a sovereign state.

16. Commissioners from South Carolina asked of the President the withdrawal of government troops from the state, and the surrender of the forts, to which measures he

1861. refused to accede. Early in February, a conference was held in Washington, in which eleven states were represented. The object of this assembly was to devise means to preserve peace, bring back the seceding states to their allegiance, ask Congress and the state governments to repeal obnoxious laws, and to recommend and adopt measures conducive to harmony. But the intentions of this peace conference entirely failed, and they could agree on no acceptable course of measures to arrest the career of secession and dismemberment.

17. A convention of the six seceding states was held at Montgomery, Alabama. Three delegates were also present from North Carolina. This convention adopted a provisional government, and elected Jefferson Davis, of Mississippi, President, and Alexander H. Stephens, of Georgia, Vice-President. General Twiggs, commander of the United States forces in Texas, surrendered all the forts in that state to the secessionists, and directed the withdrawal of the troops.

18. During this session of Congress, Dacotah, Nevada, and Colorado were organized as territories, destined in future time to take their places as states in the Federal Union. On the 11th of February, Abraham Lincoln, President elect, left his home at Springfield, Illinois, for the seat of government, where he arrived on the 23d. In the cities and towns through which he passed, he was received with the warmest expressions of respect and enthusiasm. Mr. Buchanan remained in Washington until after the inauguration of his successor, when he retired to private life.

19. The administration now about entering on the threshold of its duties has much to encounter. Whether it will be able to stem the tide of secession, which, by its

1861. encroaching waves, threatens to sweep away our ancient landmarks, it is not our province to conjecture or predict. It will have to encounter rebellion, treason, civil war, the prostration of commerce, the failure of revenue, and an increasing public debt. Instead of thirty-four states, united by common ties, it will behold a formidable array of declared enemies, who have rudely severed the bond of union framed by the wisdom of their fathers. It will be incumbent on the administration now assuming the reins of government, "to see that the laws be faithfully executed," and it will be bound by a solemn obligation to suppress rebellion at any sacrifice, except the surrender of honor and principle.

Questions on James Buchanan's Administration.—1. What is said of the Mormons in Utah? Who was appointed governor by the President? Who were sent to Utah?

2. What did the inhabitants of Salt Lake City do? What did the government promise to do?

3. What did the President recommend to Congress? On what ground was the admission of Kansas objected to? Was the bill passed? What is said of a subsequent bill?

4. When was Minnesota admitted into the Union? What is said of the growth and settlement of this new state? When, where, and by whom was it first settled?

5. When was Oregon admitted? When and where was it first settled?

6. Why was the Lecompton Constitution opposed? Why was it advocated?

7. What cities were visited by the Japanese ambassadors? What other distinguished person visited the United States in 1860?

8. Name the candidates nominated for the Presidency. Who were elected President and Vice-President?

9. What state seceded from the Union?

10. Where is Fort Moultrie? By whom was it garrisoned? To

what other fort did the commander withdraw his forces? What had General Cass urged the President to do?

11. What cabinet officers resigned, and why? Who succeeded them?

12. What government property was seized in Georgia? In North Carolina? In Alabama? What was done by South Carolina?

13. What states seceded in January? What is said of the Star of the West?

14. Who resigned his situation in the cabinet, and why? What seizures of government property were made in Louisiana? In Florida? What is said of Lieutenant Slemmer?

15. What is said of the admission of Kansas?

16. What was asked by the commissioners from South Carolina?

17. Where was the convention of the seceding states held? What states were represented? Who was elected President and Vice-President? What was done by General Twiggs?

18. What territories were organized? What is said of Mr. Lincoln? How was he received by the people? What is said of Mr. Buchanan?

19. What will the new administration have to encounter?

ABRAHAM LINCOLN'S ADMINISTRATION.

1861. 1. On the 4th of March, Mr. Lincoln was inaugurated as President. In his address to the vast multitude assembled, he announced his intention of maintaining the supremacy of the laws, collecting the public revenues, and suppressing rebellion; and called on law-abiding citizens to do all in their power to preserve peace and uphold the integrity of the Union.

2. Seven states had by formal acts seceded from the Union, and were arrayed in active hostilities against the Federal government. These were, South Carolina, Mississippi, Alabama, Florida, Georgia, Louisiana, and Texas. Major Anderson was besieged in Fort Sumter, and Lieutenant Slemmer in Fort Pickens. The government made no open demonstration of its intentions until April 11th, when it notified the insurgents, that the fleet now sent out was destined to supply Fort Sumter.

3. The authorities at Charleston immediately cut off Major Anderson's supplies and attacked the fort. Fort Moultrie commenced the bombardment, and was followed by the batteries on Mount Pleasant, Cummings' Point, and the floating battery, with shot and shell. Firing was kept up all day by the enemy, and renewed by Major Anderson the following morning (April 13th). But a breach had been made in the walls, some of the cannon were dismounted, and the officers' quarters set on fire. With a small number of men, who were exhausted from their incessant exertions, the gallant commander found the fort no longer tenable, and, raising a flag of truce, agreed to evacuate. Fort

1861. Moultrie was much damaged by Anderson's fire, but there appears to have been no loss of life on either side.

4. The news of the fall of Fort Sumter produced an excitement rarely witnessed. Feelings of attachment to the Union, and a determination to uphold it, were exhibited by all classes of people. In the loyal states secession and treason found no favor, and the voice of the people, with one accord, declared that rebellion must be suppressed. The President issued a proclamation, calling for seventy-five thousand militia in defence of the country, and an extra session of Congress on the 4th of July. The call of the President for troops was promptly responded to, and regiments were mustered into service, armed, equipped, and sent forward immediately.

5. As the city of Washington was threatened with an attack from the rebels, a number of the newly-levied troops hastened to its defence. The first arrival for that purpose consisted of five hundred Pennsylvania volunteers, whose appearance in the Federal city the 18th of April gave great joy to all its loyal inhabitants. On the following day a regiment of Massachusetts troops was assailed in the streets of Baltimore by a rebel mob, and fired on, when three of the soldiers were killed and a number wounded. The troops returned the fire, and several of the assailants fell. A body of unarmed Pennsylvania troops were attacked at the depot, and some severely wounded. They at last made their escape by being sent back in the train (April 19th).

6. Virginia, by act of a convention, declared for secession. This act was dissented from by the western portion of the state, the people of which declared their attachment to the Union, and elected delegates to a convention which assembled at Wheeling. The enemy in Maryland destroyed the



ENTRY OF FIRST TROOPS INTO WASHINGTON, APRIL 18, 1861.

1861. railroad bridges from Havre-de-Grace to Baltimore to prevent the passage of troops. This obliged the troops leaving from the Middle and Eastern States to go by sea, and thence up the Potomac, or to embark at Havre-de-Grace, and proceed to Washington by way of Annapolis.

7. The troops at Harper's Ferry, after removing all the arms they could with safety, destroyed the public buildings and the remaining stock of arms, and retreated to Washington. At Portsmouth, Va., the rebels placed obstructions in the harbor, to prevent the removal of vessels lying at the Navy Yard. In consequence, the government troops destroyed the Navy Yard, and a ship on the stocks. The other vessels were burnt or sunk to prevent their falling into the hands of the enemy.

1861. 8. Early in May, the President issued his proclamation, calling into the service of the United States forty-two thousand volunteers for the army, and eighteen thousand seamen for the navy, to serve for the term of three years unless sooner discharged. Arkansas, Tennessee, and North Carolina withdrew from the Union, and now rank with the seceded states. In Missouri strenuous efforts were made by the secessionists to take the state out of the Union, but without success. In St. Louis an attack was made on the United States troops by the rebels. The soldiers fired on the mob, and upwards of twenty were killed. A camp had been formed by state troops, supposed to be secessionists, which was captured, and the troops made prisoners of war.

9. General Butler and a large body of troops now occupied Baltimore, and the railroad and bridges having been rebuilt, the city again assumed a quiet and orderly condition. During the month of May three regiments of Pennsylvania troops encamped near Fort McHenry. They were under the command of General Cadwalader. The secessionists erected a number of batteries on the Elizabeth River, the approach to Norfolk. They also put up a battery at Sewall's Point, which would command the vessels blockading James River. The "Star" opened a cannonade, and while thus engaged, Captain Ward's steam flotilla from New York arrived. By request the captain took post with his vessel, the "Freeborn," within five hundred yards of the shore, which dislodged the party and destroyed the battery. It was, however, afterwards rebuilt, and continued for several months in the occupancy of the rebels.

10. On the 24th of May, a body of troops took possession of Arlington Heights, Va., and then marched to Alexandria. At this place a tragical event occurred. Colonel Ellsworth,

1861. commander of the New York Zouaves, who had taken down a secession flag from the Marshall House, was assailed by the proprietor, and killed by a discharge from a double-barrelled gun. The assassin instantly fell, pierced with bullets. Colonel Ellsworth was a young man, highly esteemed, and possessing a great degree of military skill. His death was universally lamented.

11. Early in June, Stephen A. Douglas, the distinguished senator and statesman, died at his residence in Chicago, Illinois. His death was looked on as a great national calamity. Two columns of troops, under General McClellan's command, surprised a camp of the rebels near Philippi, Va., routing them completely, and capturing a large amount of arms, ammunition, horses, and camp equipage. Colonel Kelly, commander of one of the detachments, was severely wounded.

12. Early on the morning of June 10th, General Butler sent detachments from Fortress Monroe and Newport News against the enemy, who had formed an intrenched camp at Great Bethel, on the Yorktown road. At midnight, Colonel Duryea's Zouaves and Colonel Townsend's Albany regiment crossed the river at Hampton, and marched onward. Colonel Bendix's regiment, and detachments of Vermont and Massachusetts troops, moved from Newport News, to form a junction with the troops first named. Unfortunately, in the darkness of the night, each detachment mistook the other for the enemy, and commenced a fire, by which one man was killed and several wounded.

13. At daybreak, Colonels Allen's and Carr's regiments marched from the fortress and joined the main body, which now advanced on the enemy, who were intrenched behind a masked battery. An unsuccessful attempt was made to take the battery, when General Pierce, commander of the

1861. expedition, ordered a retreat. Lieutenant John T. Greble, of the regular army, a brave and accomplished officer, who had rendered efficient service in the action, had just obeyed the order to retreat, and endeavored to withdraw his command, when he was struck on the head by a ball from the rebel battery and instantly killed. His death was universally lamented throughout the Union, and particularly in Philadelphia, his birthplace, where he was favorably known and beloved by hosts of friends. Major Winthrop, of Massachusetts, a brave and gallant officer, also fell in this disastrous engagement.

14. In Missouri the rebels at Booneville, under Jackson and Price, were attacked by General Lyon, who crossed the river below the town and opened on them with a heavy fire. The rebels now retreated into a wood, whence they fired on the Federal troops. General Lyon then ordered a retreat, when the rebels left their position, and followed him. General Lyon then faced about, and opened a heavy cannonade on the enemy, who were effectually repulsed.

15. Captain Ward, of the United States steamer Freeborn, landed twenty-five men (at Matthias Point, with the intention of erecting a battery. Lieutenant Chaplin, of the Pawnee, had charge of the expedition. A breastwork was hastily constructed, but before it could be mounted with guns, they were surprised by the enemy, who poured in a heavy fire of musketry. Under cover of the guns of the Freeborn, the crews put off in their boats, and some escaped by swimming. Captain Ward behaved with great coolness, directing the fire from the steamer, when he was struck with a ball and killed. The only life lost was that of the brave commander (June 27th).

16. The troops under General Patterson crossed the Potomac at Williamsport. About a mile from Falling

1861. Waters they encountered the enemy, and a sharp conflict ensued, resulting in the defeat of the rebels. At Hainesville a stand was made by the rebels, who were again repulsed (July 2d). Agreeably to the call of the President, Congress met July 4th. The President's Message, read to both houses on the second day of the session, recited, in calm and dispassionate language, the history of the rebellion, the secession of several states, and the seizure of the forts and public revenues within their borders. He recommended the adoption of vigorous measures for the suppression of the rebellion.

17. A large majority of both houses responded cordially to the recommendations of the President, by voting the necessary supplies of men and money to support the war. In the Senate, Messrs. Mason, Hunter, Clingman, Bragg, Chestnut, Nicholson, Sebastian, Mitchell, Wigfall, and Hemphill, from the seceding states, were expelled.

18. An engagement took place between the United States troops under Colonel Sigel, and the Missouri state troops under Jackson and Price. The enemy's force was greatly superior in numbers, but Colonel Sigel possessed more efficient artillery. The battle commenced at ten o'clock, and at noon the battery of the enemy was silenced. The infantry now advanced, and the enemy's centre was broken. The rebels sent a detachment to capture Sigel's baggage train, which was three miles in the rear. Colonel Sigel ordered a retreat, and sent word to the baggage train to advance, and by these means frustrated the enemy's intentions. He then retired to Carthage, and thence to Sarcoxie, without molestation (July 5th).

19. A battle was fought at Rich Mountain, Va., where the enemy under Colonel Pegram were entrenched. General Rosecrans marched against them, when a desperate

1861. fight ensued, which lasted an hour, when the enemy fled. After the battle, General McClellan pushed on to Beverly. His men took possession of the enemy's works, all his cannon, and a large amount of wagons, tents, &c. Soon after, Colonel Pegram, with six hundred men, surrendered himself and command as prisoners of war (July 11th).

20. Another battle took place near St. George, Tucker County, Va., between the rebels and the pursuing forces of General McClellan. General Morris commanded the division, and completely routed the enemy, with a loss of two hundred killed and one thousand prisoners. General Garnett, commander of the rebels, fell while endeavoring to rally his troops. General McDowell, with his army, marched against Fairfax Court House, of which they took possession without resistance, the enemy evacuating the town on the approach of the Federal troops, leaving a quantity of provisions and military stores behind. The army then advanced to Centreville, which they occupied without opposition (July 17th).

21. General Tyler marched with his division from Centreville, and learning that the rebels had masked batteries at Bull Run, sent out a detachment to reconnoitre. The troops came upon the masked battery, which opened a destructive fire, that was promptly returned by the Federal troops. Their supply of grape and canister shot, however, failing, they were obliged to retire (July 18th).

22. The whole army, under command of General McDowell, advanced towards the rebel batteries, and the following morning (July 21st) commenced an attack. At two o'clock, by a bright moonlight, the march began. The second division, Colonel Hunter, led the advance. The first division, led by General Tyler, advanced in nearly

1861. a parallel column. At daybreak they reached Bull Run, and their guns opened on the enemy's works. The firing was responded to by three batteries, and continued till 11 A. M. The enemy's fire then ceased, and a charge was made on the batteries, which in a few minutes were taken, the Confederate flag torn down, and the Stars and Stripes raised.

23. But now a sad reverse occurred, and the victory was turned into a defeat. While the men were resting from their fatigue, and rejoicing in their success, other masked batteries opened a destructive fire with musketry and cannon. The enemy was invisible, and the late victors were compelled to abandon the batteries they had so gallantly captured. They retired in good order under cover of their artillery. At three o'clock, the enemy, who had been strongly reinforced, charged on the Federal troops, and compelled them to retreat. General McDowell had intended making a stand at Centreville, but such a panic seized the army, followed by an overwhelming force, that his intention was fruitless. The army retreated rapidly through Centreville and Fairfax, finally stopping at its old entrenchments on the Potomac.

24. The loss of life on both sides in this battle was fearful. The Union army lost many valuable officers, among whom were Colonel Cameron, of the 79th New York Regiment, Colonel Slocum, 2d R. I., Lt. Colonel Fowler, 14th N. Y. The plan of the commander-in-chief contemplated a union of the army at Charlestown, Va., with General McDowell, to prevent General Johnston reinforcing Beauregard. But this plan was not carried out, and the rebel forces at Bull Run received such an accession of numbers, that they were enabled to drive back the Union

1861. forces, and capture a large quantity of artillery and baggage.

25. General Lyon, with three columns, under the command of himself, Sigel, and Sturgess, attacked the enemy (August 10th) at Wilson's Creek, near Springfield, Mo. The engagement was severe, and the enemy fell back towards their encampments. Their tents and baggage-wagons were burned by the shells of Totten's artillery. General Lyon was killed while leading his detachment, and the command devolved on General Sigel, who continued the pursuit of the enemy till nightfall. Next day he retreated to Springfield, after which he fell back to Rolla, with his prisoners and baggage, and waited for reinforcements. Both sides claimed the victory.

26. On the 26th of August, a battle took place at Cross Lanes, near Summerville, Va. Colonel Tyler, of the 7th Ohio Regiment, with his whole command, was surrounded and attacked in front and on both flanks. The United States troops cut their way through, formed in line of battle, and retreated in good order. An expedition of nine vessels under Commodore Stringham and General Butler, with one thousand troops, was sent against the forts at Hatteras Inlet, N. C. After a severe bombardment, Forts Clark and Hatteras were captured, together with seven hundred and fifteen men, a large quantity of military stores, a brig laden with cotton, and a sloop with provisions and stores. None were killed or wounded on the part of the United States. The rebels lost eight killed and fifteen severely wounded. This victory gave the government control of the coast of North Carolina.

27. In the month of September, a number of battles and skirmishes occurred. The first took place at Boone Court House, Va., in which the enemy was routed. An

1861. attack was made on a reconnoitring party at Lewinsville, Va., and soon after, Colonel Geary's pickets at Darnstown, Md., were assaulted by about four hundred and fifty rebels. Three companies of the 28th Pennsylvania Regiment, and two companies of the 13th Massachusetts, were sent against them, and they were routed from every house and breastwork which they had occupied.

28. General Rosecrans attacked General Floyd, who occupied a strong position near Summerville, Va., with an army of three thousand men, and sixteen field-pieces. Colonel Lytle's regiment was in advance, and drove the enemy out of camp. He then advanced against the battery, but fell wounded. Colonel Smith, of the 13th Ohio Regiment, engaged the enemy on the left, and Colonel Lowe, of the 19th, in front. Colonel Lowe was killed in the early part of the engagement. McMullin's battery and Snyder's field-pieces silenced two of the rebels' guns. The German brigade was led into action, but night coming on closed the engagement. In the night, Floyd crossed the Gauley River, and escaped.

29. On the 17th, General Price, with a large force, marched against the fort at Lexington, Mo., and demanded its surrender. The brave commander, Colonel Mulligan, refused the demand, on which the attack was commenced by artillery. The engagement continued two hours, when the rebels were repulsed with a heavy loss. The attack was renewed on the 18th, and continued without intermission. The enemy cut off the supply of water, and the garrison fought for fifty-nine hours, without anything to assuage their thirst, until the 20th, when the fort was surrendered. No place was ever more bravely defended, but the desperate valor of the garrison could not

1861. avail, against the immense disparity of force brought to bear upon them, in addition to their sufferings.

30. Major Gould, with some troops of the 13th Massachusetts Regiment, crossed the Potomac for the purpose of securing twenty-two thousand bushels of wheat stored at Harper's Ferry. On the 14th of October, the detachment commanded by Colonel Geary crossed the river, and on that and the following day succeeded in transporting the wheat to the Maryland side. Having accomplished the object of their expedition, they were about returning to their encampments, when, on the morning of the 16th, an attack was made on the outer line of pickets, consisting of companies D and F of the 28th Pennsylvania. They were at first driven in, but soon made a stand in the town of Bolivar, where they were joined by a portion of the Massachusetts regiment and two companies of the 3d Wisconsin, all under the command of Colonel Geary.

31. These forces sustained for a time a tremendous fire of shot and shell, and repulsed three cavalry charges made upon them. A battery from Loudon Heights opened fire upon them. About one o'clock, Lieutenant Martin, of the New York 9th Artillery, arrived on the field with one of James's rifled cannon. He at once, by some well-directed shots, silenced the enemy's battery, and disabled a steel rifled cannon, which was dragged from the field as useless. A furious charge was now made by the combined forces, which was successful, compelling the enemy to fly in the direction of Charlestown, completely demoralized.

32. On the 21st of October, by orders of General Stone, a body of troops crossed the Potomac at Ball's Bluff.

1861. A detachment of Massachusetts troops marched towards Leesburg, and were attacked by a large force of the enemy concealed in a ravine. Twenty-three fell, and the survivors retreated, falling back until reinforced. Colonel Baker, of the California Regiment, now took command, and the battle raged with great fury from two until four o'clock. Colonel Baker, while actively engaged, was shot, and fell dead. Lieutenant-Colonel Wistar was severely wounded, and the command devolved on Colonel Coggeshall, of the New York Tammany Regiment. At dusk the order was given to retreat. The troops had been brought over in two or three scows, totally inadequate as a means of transportation to make an attack, and now nearly useless, from the numbers pressing in them to escape the murderous fire of the rebels.

33. One of the boats was sunk from being overloaded, and many of the fugitives drowned. Others threw their arms and knapsacks into the Potomac, and sought safety by swimming, narrowly escaping with their lives. Others were swept away by a rapid current to a watery grave. The United States troops numbered about seventeen hundred, while the enemy brought three thousand five hundred into the field. This was the most unfortunate battle of the war; rushed into blindly, rashly, and without due preparation, terminating in a bloody massacre. The number of killed, wounded, and missing was six hundred and forty, many of whom were taken prisoners. Great sorrow was felt for the death of Colonel Baker, a senator in Congress from California, and a military officer of great experience. The troops behaved bravely, and no blame attaches to them or their lamented leader.

34. Lexington, Mo., was recaptured in October, by Major White, and another victory was gained at Frederick-

town, in the same state, by Major Schofield, while
1861. Fremont's body-guard, under Major Zagoni, defeated the rebels at Springfield. At Romney, Va., General Kelly gained a complete victory over the rebels, after a battle which continued two hours. On the last of the month, General Scott tendered his resignation as commander-in-chief of the army, in consequence of his great age and increasing infirmities. General McClellan was appointed to succeed him. General Winfield Scott was born in Virginia in 1776, and has been distinguished for active service during the chief part of his long and useful life.

35. A naval expedition was sent out in October. The fleet was under the command of Commodore Dupont, and consisted of fifty vessels. It encountered very stormy weather, and a number of the smaller vessels were wrecked. But on the evening of the 4th of November, the lighter transports and gunboats were anchored in the roadstead of Port Royal, S. C. On the following morning the Wabash crossed the bar, followed by the Atlantic, the Vanderbilt, and other vessels of deep draught. On the 7th an attack was made on the forts at Hilton Head and Bay Point. The battle continued four hours, when a flag of truce was raised on Fort Walker. General Sherman, commanding the land forces, took possession of the fort and the cannon, which had been abandoned by the rebels. The town of Beaufort was deserted by its white inhabitants, and taken possession of by the United States troops.

36. Commodore Wilkes, of the San Jacinto, arrested the rebel commissioners, Messrs. Slidell and Mason, on their way to England. They were taken from the English mail steamer Trent, and sent to Fort Warren, as prisoners. When the news of their capture reached England, there

1861. was an immense degree of excitement, and clamor for war, to avenge the insulted flag and the national honor. Negotiations took place between the British ministry and the Secretary of State, which resulted in the surrender of the rebel ambassadors to the British government, and their release from captivity, and thus the difficulty terminated.

37. In the Senate a motion was made to expel John C. Breckinridge for having joined the rebels, and passed without dissent. Subsequently, Johnson and Polk, senators from Missouri, were expelled for the same cause. In December, a battle occurred in Western Virginia; General Milroy commanding the United States forces, and General Johnson the rebels. The latter were driven into their fortifications, when the Union forces retired. Another battle took place near Warrenton, Mo., when Colonel Davis defeated the rebels, took twelve hundred prisoners, including several officers of distinction, a thousand horses, a thousand stand of arms, and a large quantity of baggage and supplies.

Questions on Abraham Lincoln's Administration.—1. What did the President announce in his inaugural address?

2. What states had seceded from the Union? What is said of Major Anderson? Lieutenant Slemmer? What did the government do on the 11th of April?

3. What was done by the authorities of Charleston? Give an account of the bombardment.

4. What effect was produced by the fall of Fort Sumter? What did the President call for in his proclamation?

5. What city was threatened with an attack? What troops first arrived for its defence? What is said of a Massachusetts regiment? Of Pennsylvania troops? When did this occur?

6. What was done by Virginia? What did the western portion do? What was done by the rebels in Maryland?

7. What was done by the troops at Harper's Ferry? At Portsmouth, Va.?

8. How many troops did the President now call for? How many seamen? What states now seceded? What was done in Missouri? In St. Louis?

9. What was done by General Butler? What troops were sent to Baltimore? Near what fort were they encamped? Where did the secessionists of Virginia erect batteries? Describe the attack on Sewall's Point.

10. Of what places did the Federal troops take possession? What tragical event occurred?

11. When and where did Senator Douglas die? What is said of his death? What is said of General McClellan? Colonel Kelly?

12. What did General Butler do? Describe the expedition.

13. What took place at daybreak? What was the result? What officers were killed? What is said of Lieutenant Greble? Of Major Winthrop?

14. Describe the battle of Booneville. Who commanded the rebels? The Union troops?

15. What was done by Captain Ward? Who had command of the expedition? Describe the operations of the party. What vessel furnished its protection? Who was killed?

16. What did General Patterson's troops do? What battles ensued; and when? When did Congress assemble? What was recommended by the President?

17. Who were expelled from the Senate?

18. Describe the battle in Missouri. Who commanded the Federal troops? The Secession troops? Give the date.

19. Describe the battle of Rich Mountain. Who were the commanders? What did General McClellan do? What is said of Colonel Pegram?

20. Describe the battle near St. George. What general was killed? What was done by General McDowell and his army? Where did the army then advance? Give the date.

21. What did General Tyler do? What took place at Bull Run?

22. What did General McDowell do July 21st? When did the

march begin? Who commanded the divisions? What place was reached at daybreak? How long did the firing continue? What then took place?

23. What was done by the masked batteries? What were the Federal troops obliged to do? What occurred at three o'clock? To what places did the army retreat?

24. What officers were killed? What was the plan of the commander-in-chief? Was the plan carried out? What were the consequences?

25. Who attacked the enemy at Wilson's Creek? Describe the battle. Who was killed? Who now took command? What did General Sigel do the following day?

26. Describe the battle of Cross Lanes. Where did another battle occur? Who commanded the naval expedition? The land forces? What were captured?

27. What battles now occurred? Describe the attack on Colonel Geary's pickets. Who were sent against the enemy?

28. Where was General Floyd posted? Describe the attack. How long did the battle continue? What became of Floyd?

29. Who commenced an attack on the fort at Lexington, Missouri? Who commanded the fort? Describe the battle on the 17th. On the 18th. What compelled the garrison to surrender?

30. Why did Major Gould cross the Potomac? To whom did he send for reinforcements? What was accomplished by them? What companies were attacked? By whom were they reinforced? Who commanded these forces?

31. Describe the battle. Who arrived on the field? What was done by Lieutenant Martin? What was now done by the combined forces? State the result.

32. What was done by order of General Stone? Who took the lead? What took place near Leesburg? Who now took command? How long did the battle continue? Who was killed? Wounded? Who took command? What means were provided for retreat?

33. Describe the attempt at recrossing the river. What were the respective numbers of the opposing forces? What was the number of killed, wounded, and missing? What is said of Colonel Baker?

84. Who recaptured Lexington? What other victories were gained in Missouri? In Virginia? What was done by General Scott? Who succeeded him?

85. When was a naval expedition sent out? Of what did it consist? Who commanded? What did it encounter? Where did a portion of the fleet anchor, and when? What vessels crossed the bar the following day? What took place on the 7th? State the result. What town had been deserted?

86. Who were arrested by Commodore Wilkes? What was the effect in England? How was the affair settled?

87. Who were expelled from the Senate? What battle in Virginia? In Missouri? What were captured?

EVENTS OF 1862.

1862. 1. On the 19th of January, the rebel General Zollickoffer attacked General Thomas's encampment, eight miles from Somerset, Ky. The 10th Indiana Regiment held the enemy in check for half an hour, when it was relieved by the 9th Ohio, 2d Minnesota, and 4th Kentucky. The 1st and 2d Tennessee were ordered on the right wing to outflank the enemy. After fighting for two hours, a desperate bayonet charge was made on the enemy, which drove them to their intrenchments. Night put an end to the conflict, and the rebel troops crossed the Cumberland River in the night. During the engagement, General Zollickoffer was slain, and his body left on the battle-field.

2. A naval expedition sent against the rebels on the Tennessee River, attacked Fort Henry, which surrendered after a spirited resistance. The surrender was made by General Tilghman to flag-officer Foote. After the battle

1862. the gunboats Lexington, Conestoga, and Tyler went up the river a distance of two hundred and fifty miles, from Paducah to Florence, in Alabama, at the head of navigation. Everywhere along the river they were welcomed by Union men, and their flag hailed with shouts of joy. Ex-President Tyler died at Richmond after a short illness. Jesse D. Bright, of Indiana, was expelled from the Senate for correspondence with Jefferson Davis.

3. General Burnside, with a large body of troops, sailed for the coast of North Carolina, the fleet being under command of Commodore Goldsborough. On the 1st of February, the fleet advanced against Roanoke and attacked the batteries. The bombardment continued through the day, during which the troops effected a landing, and, the following morning, marched upon the enemy in detachments commanded by Generals Foster, Reno, and Parke. After a battle of several hours' continuance, the enemy surrendered. Six forts, forty cannon, three thousand small arms, and twenty-two hundred prisoners were captured. Commodore Goldsborough attacked and destroyed the rebel fleet, and landed on the coast, when the troops captured Elizabeth City (February 8th).

4. Edenton, Hertford, Colerain, and Plymouth were soon afterwards surrendered by the inhabitants. Fort Donelson, on the Cumberland River, Tenn., was bombarded by the gunboats which had done such gallant service at Fort Henry. A galling fire from the rebel batteries inflicted severe injuries upon them, and crippled their energies. But what was lost by the naval part of the forces was made up by the troops who invested the fort, and after a severe contest compelled its surrender (February 16th).

5. The fort, with fifteen thousand prisoners, was given



BATTLE OF FORT DONELSON.

1862. up to General Grant. General Floyd, with about five thousand men, had escaped previously. Nashville soon after submitted to the United States troops without opposition. The division of the army under General Banks made a forward movement, by crossing the Potomac, and taking possession of Harper's Ferry, Bolivar, Charlestown, Martinsburg, and other towns in Virginia. Colonel Geary took possession of Leesburg, and drove out General Hill with his entire command. Fort Johnson was taken possession of, and named Fort Geary (March 8th).

6. On the 8th of March, a naval battle took place near Newport News. The iron-clad steamer Merrimac, and the steamers Yorktown and Jamestown, attacked the United States fleet stationed near the mouth of the James River. The Merrimac ran into the sloop-of-war Cumberland, which she sunk, and then attacked the frigate Congress, which

1862. had been previously assailed by the other rebel steamers. The United States vessel, unable to contend against iron-clad vessels, surrendered, and her officers and crew became prisoners. The steamer Minnesota, sent to the relief of the captured vessel, ran aground, and, in this condition, was attacked by the Merrimac. In the night the Ericsson iron-clad steamer Monitor arrived, and at once went to the assistance of the Minnesota.

7. On the following morning the contest was renewed, and carried on by the two iron-clad steamers from eight o'clock until noon, when the Monitor made a large hole in the Merrimac; the latter, with the rest of the fleet, escaped to Norfolk. By this battle the United States lost two vessels, the officers of the Congress, who became prisoners, and the officers and crew who were drowned by the sinking of the Cumberland. The Minnesota was relieved from her perilous condition, and the arrival of the Monitor changed the fortunes of the day.

8. Commodore Dupont, with a portion of his fleet, captured the town of Brunswick, Geo. The fleet then proceeded to Cumberland Sound, Florida, and took Fernandina. Fort Clinch was abandoned on the approach of the fleet, and St. Mary's was captured without opposition. The Army of the South-West, under General Curtis, after three days' hard fighting, gained an important victory over the combined forces of Van Dorn, McCullough, Price, and McIntosh. The battle commenced on the 6th of March, near Sugar Creek, Arkansas, but, on the following day, was transferred to Pea Ridge. On the 8th the battle was renewed, when the enemy was routed, and retired in great confusion. Guns, flags, and provisions were captured in large quantities. This battle is generally known by the name of Pea Ridge.

1862. 9. The rebels in Virginia retreated from Manassas and Centreville, and the Federal troops took possession of them March 10th. A battle took place on the 23d, between the forces under Generals Jackson, Smith, and Longstreet, and the United States troops under General Shields. It commenced about ten in the morning, and continued till dark. The rebels numbered about fifteen thousand, while the United States troops were eight thousand. The loss was heavy on both sides. The battle ended by the flight of the rebels, who threw away their arms in their hasty retreat to Strasburg.

10. The rebels evacuated New Madrid, Missouri, on the night of March 13th, leaving a quantity of guns and stores which they were unable to carry away. At Island No. 10,* in the Mississippi River, the enemy had a large force, well provided with artillery. Commodore Foote, with his flotilla and mortar-boats, attacked the fortifications on the island. General Pope, with his army, crossed the river from the Tennessee shore. This movement cut off all chance of the rebels' retreat, and they were obliged to surrender, after a siege of several weeks' continuance. By this capitulation, six thousand soldiers became prisoners of war, including three generals. One hundred siege guns, several field batteries, and a large quantity of small arms and stores were captured.

11. On the 14th of March, General Burnside commenced an attack on the enemy's works, six miles below Newbern, N. C. They were defended by a large force, and reached nearly two miles. After four hours' hard fighting, the rebels were driven out of their positions, with the loss of

* So called from its being the tenth in number from the mouth of the Ohio.



SURRENDER OF ISLAND NO. 10.

1862. three batteries of field artillery, forty-six heavy siege guns, large stores of ammunition, three thousand small arms, and two hundred prisoners. The chief part of the rebels escaped by the cars to Goldsborough, burning the bridges over the Trent and Claremont Rivers. The Federal troops were commanded by Generals Reno, Foster, and Parks. After the capture of Newbern, General Burnside sent an expedition against Beaufort, in the same state. This town was evacuated by the enemy, on approach of the troops.

12. The city of St. Augustine was surrendered to Commodore Dupont's fleet without opposition, the municipal authorities receiving Commodore Rodgers in the Town Hall, and raising the United States flag. Fort Marion was deserted by the rebel troops on approach of the gunboats, and Jacksonville was surrendered by the authorities.

1862. Generals Beauregard and Johnston left their position at Corinth, April 6th, and attacked the Union forces at Pittsburgh Landing, Tennessee. General Prentiss's division was first attacked, and driven in. General Sherman's division now sustained the heaviest fire of the enemy, which drove the Federal troops from their camps, and a fresh division coming up assailed General McClelland's division. The battle continued till five o'clock, at which time the rebels had driven the Federal troops to the bank of the river. The gunboats Lexington and Tyler now threw a quantity of shell on the rebel forces, and night coming on, the combatants rested. The rebel forces numbered sixty thousand, while the United States troops did not exceed thirty-eight thousand. During the night the forces under Generals Lewis Wallace and Buell arrived.

13. Early on the morning of the 7th, the battle was renewed by General Wilson on the left and General Wallace on the right. General Nelson's force opened a galling fire on the enemy, and advanced rapidly as they fell back, and General Buell succeeded in flanking them and capturing their batteries of artillery. At three o'clock, General Grant rode to the left, where fresh regiments had been ordered, and sent a portion of his body-guard to the head of each of the five regiments, and then ordered a charge, before which the rebels fled in dismay. General Buell followed the rebels, now in full retreat towards Corinth. The losses were severe on both sides. Among the killed was General Albert Sydney Johnston, the rebel commander, and General W. H. Wallace, of the United States forces. General Prentiss was taken prisoner at the commencement of the first day's battle.

14. Fort Pulaski, Geo., was attacked and bombarded on

1862. the 10th of April, by General Hunter. At two o'clock on the following day, a large breach having been made in the walls, the garrison surrendered. Fort Macon, N. C., was surrendered April 25th, after a bombardment of more than ten hours. But the most important event of the war thus far, was the surrender of the city of New Orleans. On the approach of the fleet commanded by flag-officer D. G. Farragut, the rebel army abandoned the city, and it was surrendered to the fleet by the municipal authorities (April 26th). General Butler, with his army, landed in the city soon after, taking military possession. Baton Rouge was also occupied by the United States forces.

15. Previous to the surrender of New Orleans, the enemy placed all sorts of obstructions in the river, to prevent the passage of the fleet. The bombardment of the forts St. Philip and Jackson commenced on the 18th of April, and continued until the 23d, when Commodore Farragut, with the fleet, passed the forts, firing upon them in the passage, and sustaining a terrible fire in return. The fleet, however, effected the hazardous passage, while the mortar-boats, under Commander Porter, kept up an incessant bombardment on the forts. The attack on the forts was continued until the 28th, when they were surrendered. The naval engagement resulted in the destruction or capture of the enemy's fleet, thus leaving the city defenceless. General Lovell withdrew on approach of the fleet, and the second commercial city of the United States was again placed under Federal authority.

16. General Mitchell, with his division, made a rapid advance through Kentucky and Tennessee, to Northern Alabama. They rebuilt the broken bridges, relaid the torn-up rails, and then surprised the enemy at Huntsville,

1862. seizing the railroad and cars, and vast quantities of stores. General Pope defeated the rebels at Farmington, took over two thousand prisoners, a large amount of tents, four pieces of cannon, and several hundred muskets.

17. Early in April, General McClellan, with his army, embarked on board of transports, and proceeded down the Potomac River and Chesapeake Bay to Fortress Monroe. The troops landed on the peninsula formed by the York and James Rivers, and marched towards Yorktown, at which place the rebels had collected in strong force, and erected formidable batteries. The United States troops threw up fortifications, and prepared for the siege and attack. A fierce contest was now looked for, but on the night of May 3d, the enemy abandoned his works at Yorktown and Gloucester, and on the 4th, General McClellan took possession, and sent his cavalry and horse artillery, supported by infantry, in pursuit of the enemy. On the same evening the mounted troops came up with the enemy, and a brisk conflict ensued.

18. At daylight on the 5th, the enemy were found to be strongly intrenched at Williamsburg. At eight o'clock the enemy opened on General Hooker's division, which was stationed on the left. During the engagement, the enemy captured three of the Federal batteries.* General Hooker's division suffered severely, as his troops bore the whole brunt of the battle for several hours, before reinforcements came to their relief. At four o'clock fresh troops came up, and General Hancock's brigade made a brilliant bayonet charge, which drove the rebels from the field to their intrenchments. During the night these were evacuated,

* These were recaptured the same day by General McClellan.

1862. and General McClellan took possession of them the following morning. The same afternoon which witnessed the battle of Williamsburg, General Franklin landed with his troops at West Point, and was attacked on the following morning. General Newton's brigade was actively engaged during the battle. At three o'clock the firing ceased and the enemy retreated (May 6th).

19. The Monitor and other steam vessels made an attack on Sewall's Point with shot and shell. The firing was briskly returned by the rebel batteries, and kept up for several hours. The Merrimac made her appearance, and halted some distance from the Monitor. As the latter vessel did not attack the Merrimac, and the rebel steamer refused to advance, no engagement took place between the vessels, and the Merrimac steamed back to Norfolk. President Lincoln, who was on a visit to Fortress Monroe, witnessed the battle from a tug-boat. On the 10th of May, General Wool, with five thousand men from Fortress Monroe, landed at Willoughby's Point, and marched towards Norfolk. At Tanner's Creek a rebel battery had been erected on the opposite bank, and near a bridge. The rebels fired a volley of musketry on the advancing troops, and then set fire to the bridge. At five o'clock, the troops approached Norfolk, when the mayor sent out a flag of truce, and surrendered the city to the United States forces, who took possession without having fired a gun. The following morning the Merrimac was blown up by the rebels, and totally destroyed, and thus was achieved a bloodless victory.

20. A severe cavalry battle took place at Lebanon, Tennessee, which resulted in the complete rout of Colonel Morgan's band of Rangers. The United States troops were led by General Dumont. They followed the rebels

1862. many miles, and surprised them in the night at their quarters in the town. Many were killed, and a hundred and sixty-nine prisoners taken. Soon after the battle of West Point, the iron-clad gunboats made an unsuccessful expedition up the James River, within seven miles of Richmond. At that point there was a heavy battery on a high bluff, and the river was obstructed by sunken vessels. The gunboats could not elevate their cannon sufficiently to reach the battery, and the enterprise was therefore abandoned. The large gun of the Naugatuck exploded during the action.

21. On the 18th of May, Suffolk, seventeen miles from Norfolk, was occupied by the Union troops, and Sewall's Point and Craney Island were abandoned by the enemy. A severe battle took place at McDowell, Va., between the forces under Generals Milroy and Schenck, and the rebel troops under Jackson. The enemy were posted on a mountain, down the side of which they rained a perfect shower of musket balls. Shortly after dark, the Ohio troops made a bayonet charge up the mountain, in the face of the enemy's fire, and drove them from their position. Finding a strong reserve of rebels on the opposite declivity, they fell back. The enemy in the mean time made a flank movement, attacking the Union troops on the left. The troops fought bravely, but finding the enemy greatly superior in force, they retreated in good order, at nine o'clock, falling back to Franklin, Pendleton County.

22: General McClellan, after the battle of West Point, steadily advanced towards Richmond. In the latter part of May, the troops crossed the Chickahominy, within eight miles of the city. On the 24th, three skirmishes took place. The rebels were driven from Mechanicsville, seven miles from Newbridge, and a body of Louisiana troops were

1862. surprised and defeated, upwards of sixty killed, and thirty-one prisoners captured. But while these successes waited on the Army of the Potomac, that of the Shenandoah sustained a sudden and unlooked-for reverse. Colonel Kenley, commanding at Front Royal, was attacked by a superior force, under Colonel Ashby. The troops made a gallant defence, falling back to the Shenandoah, which they crossed, destroying the bridge behind them. Here they made a stand, and Knapp's battery mowed down the enemy with shell and grape. Colonel Kenley was severely wounded in the early part of the battle, but continued on horseback until late in the afternoon, when he fell exhausted, and was conveyed from the field in an ambulance, made prisoner, and, being paroled, was left at Winchester.

23. Early the next morning, the enemy attacked General Banks's division in great force. The troops stood their ground for some time, but finally retreated through Winchester, forming again after leaving the town, and marching in good order to Martinsburg (May 25th). The enemy's force consisted of Ewell's and Jackson's divisions, amounting to fifteen thousand, while the Federal troops were less than four thousand. The retreat was continued to the Potomac, which was crossed at Williamsport, on the evening of the 26th. The retreating army was attacked successively, and engagements were well contested at Strasburg, Middleton, Winchester, and Newton. Of a supply train of five hundred wagons, but fifty were abandoned, notwithstanding a forced march of fifty-three miles, and the vastly superior force of the enemy.

24. Scarcely had the Confederate army succeeded in compelling General Banks to retreat from Virginia, when it commenced a retrograde movement, successively with-

1862. drawing from Martinsburg, Charlestown, and Winchester. General Fremont, by forced marches, crossed the Shenandoah mountain-ranges, and arrived at Strasburg, where he met Jackson, with his command, in full retreat. A skirmish with a portion of the forces ensued, during which Jackson withdrew his main army, and continued his retreat.

25. General Halleck, who had succeeded General Hunter, had been posted in front of Corinth, Mississippi, Beauregard's stronghold. On the 28th of May, three strong reconnoitring parties advanced on the right, centre, and left of the enemy. Their ground was hotly contested at every point, but the enemy was driven back with considerable loss. The following night the rebels evacuated the town, and on the 30th, General Pope, with the advance, entered and occupied it. In this retreat the enemy abandoned their tents, many thousand stand of arms, and a quantity of provisions. They lost a quantity of clothing, stores, and two thousand prisoners.

26. A desperate battle was fought in front of Richmond, in which the corps of Generals Sumner, Heintzelman, and Keyes were engaged with greatly superior numbers. At one o'clock the enemy attacked the Federal troops on the right flank. General Casey's division in the first line gave way before the overwhelming force of the enemy, and lost their guns and baggage. They fell back some distance, after a hard-fought battle, lasting more than three hours. At half past four o'clock, the enemy had advanced to General Couch's line. The battle was renewed with great fury, with varied success, lasting until night. The Federal troops were frequently broken, but as repeatedly rallied and attacked the enemy. The battle was desperately fought on both sides, and at the approach of night, both armies

1862. discontinued the contest, and slept on the battlefield (May 31st).

27. The following morning the rebel army still occupied the camps of Casey's and Couch's divisions. General Heintzelman came on the ground early in the morning, and consulted with General Hooker on plans for the day. About seven o'clock, the rebels commenced firing from the cover of a wood on General Hooker's division. The fire was promptly returned, but the enemy having the advantage of their position in the woods, it was resolved to dislodge them by a charge of bayonets. The enemy fired on the advancing troops when within a hundred feet of their line, without, however, doing much damage, and then fled precipitately before the fixed bayonets. The rebels were driven back for two miles. A hard fight was sustained by Richardson's brigade before the enemy gave way, but they all finally retreated before the overwhelming bravery of the Federal troops. At eleven o'clock the firing ceased, and the rest of the day was occupied in bringing in prisoners and taking care of the wounded (June 1st).

28. On Monday the Federal troops advanced on the enemy, who retreated before them. A slight exchange of fire was made, but the rebels offered no serious resistance, until within four miles of Richmond, where the advancing troops took a stand and threw out pickets. This battle is called "Fair Oaks,"* from the station near which it was fought. It was one of the severest of the war, and the losses on both sides were enormous.

29. Forts Pillow and Wright, on the Mississippi, which had been attacked by the fleet, were evacuated by their garrisons. Pensacola, Florida, was also evacuated by the

* Called "Seven Pines" by the enemy.

1862. rebel troops, and the city and Fort Barrancas came once more under Federal authority. On the 5th of June, flag-officer Davis arrived at Memphis, on the Mississippi. The rebel fleet was lying near the city. An engagement ensued, which ended in the rout of the enemy, and the capture or destruction of seven vessels. The mayor surrendered the city after the engagement. In Alabama, a detachment from General Mitchell's army, under General Negley, drove the enemy from *Winchester through *Jasper to *Chattanooga, and utterly defeated and routed them, capturing their baggage-wagons, ammunition, and supplies.

30. General Fremont continued pursuing Jackson's retreating army. On the 7th of June, he arrived at Harrisonburg, driving out the rear of the enemy, and closely following. On the 8th, a battle ensued between the respective forces at "Cross Keys," which resulted in the rout of Jackson's troops, and their retreat to Port Republic. At this place a bridge crosses the Shenandoah, over which Jackson intended to continue his retreat.

31. A detachment from General Shields's division was sent to hold this bridge, or burn it. In the night, Jackson's main body, flying before Fremont, planted twenty guns in such a position, as to command the bridge and overwhelm Colonel Carroll's detachment of sixteen hundred men. The Federal troops contested the ground with great courage, until, overcome by numbers, they fell back. They retreated until they reached General Shields's main body, when the enemy crossed the Blue Ridge towards Standardville and Gordonsville, on the way to Richmond.

* Southern part of Central Tennessee.

1862. 32. The gunboats Conestoga, Mound City, and others, ascended the White River, for the purpose of removing obstructions, and communicating with the army of General Curtis. Colonel Fitch, commander of the forces, landed a short distance below St. Charles, where the rebels had erected a battery. This was captured at the point of the bayonet, with but a very small loss on part of the troops. During the cannonading between the fort and the gunboats, a shot from one of the batteries struck the steam-drum of the Mound City, causing a fearful explosion, scalding and killing the greatest portion of the officers and crew. Many sprang into the water, and, while struggling for life, were shot by the enemy. After the fearful catastrophe, but twenty-seven out of a hundred and eighty-one men answered to their names at roll-call.

33. The last week in June witnessed some very important movements in the army near Richmond. On the 25th, the troops comprising the left wing posted at White Oak Swamp, led by General Hooker, advanced against the enemy posted on the cleared land nearer the city. A severe battle, lasting several hours, with varied success, terminated in the triumph of the Federal arms, and the occupation of the enemy's works. General McClellan now made preparations for drawing in the lines of his army, which had been spread out to an extent not deemed prudent, in view of the fact that the enemy in Richmond had been strongly reinforced. The supplies at the White House on the Pamunkey River were removed, being sent by means of transports to the James River. On the 26th, the enemy in great force crossed the Chickahominy, and attacked the Pennsylvania Reserves under General McCall, who were stationed at Mechanicsville. Falling back towards the position occupied by General Porter, an engagement

ensued, lasting till night, leaving the Federal troops masters of the ground.

1862. 34. The battle was renewed early on the following morning, the Federal troops having been ordered to withdraw gradually from their position. This they did in good order, still keeping up a fire on the enemy. After passing a wood, they came to an open country near "Gaines's Mills," on the Chickahominy. Here they halted, and the battle was renewed with great fury. General Porter was reinforced by Generals Franklin, Sumner, and Keyes. The troops continued the battle, still keeping their ground, till night closed the scene. Both sides sustained severe losses.

35. The troops successfully crossed the Chickahominy in the darkness of the night, and the bridges crossing that stream were destroyed. During the day (the 28th) no serious attack was made by the enemy. The headquarters of General McClellan were on the railroad at Savage Station. All the sick and wounded who could be moved were sent forward to James River. Orders were sent to Generals Franklin, Sumner, and Keyes to destroy the stores which could not be removed, and to gradually withdraw their forces. At midnight the transportation trains and artillery commenced moving towards Charles City, and soon afterwards were followed by General McClellan, with his staff and body-guard. General Smith held his position on the Chickahominy until the train had passed. About daylight all the troops were in motion, and were followed by the rebels, who made an attack on the corps of Sumner and Franklin. The battle commenced at two o'clock, and continued till dark, when the enemy was repulsed. This battle was near Savage Station (June 29th).

1862.

36. On the 30th, the enemy, who had been reinforced, renewed the attack at the bridge of White Oak Swamp. About two o'clock the Union troops gave way, and fell back towards Turkey Island bridge, where the battle was continued. On the morning of July 1st, the rebels commenced the attack. The battle lasted three hours, when the enemy retired. At three o'clock they again advanced, but being confronted by the gunboats and artillery, they left the field to the undisturbed possession of the Union troops. The enemy was repulsed with great slaughter in this day's contest. The withdrawal of McClellan's army from its extended position to a more secure base on the James River, was now successfully accomplished, after seven days of severe and bloody conflict, and a great loss of life. The enemy, greatly superior in numbers, had made desperate attempts to destroy or capture the retiring army, but was foiled by the coolness and bravery of the Federal troops, from the evacuation of their position on the Chickahominy to their final stand on the James River. This battle was fought on Malvern Hills.

37: The United States troops under General Benham, on James's Island, near Charleston, S. C., made an attack on the secession troops on the 16th of June, and were repulsed after four hours' hard fighting, sustaining a severe loss. The Army of Virginia was now consolidated, and placed under the command of General Pope, the three divisions being respectively commanded by Generals Sigel, Banks, and McDowell, General Fremont, by request, being relieved of his command. By advice of the governors of a number of states, the President now issued a proclamation, calling into the service of the United States three hundred thousand additional troops.

38. On the 17th of July, Congress closed its long and

arduous session. Many important acts were passed
1862. by this body, the principal of which were, an internal tax for additional revenue in support of the war, the recognition of the republics of Liberia and Hayti, an act confiscating the property of rebels in arms against the government, the abolition of slavery in the District of Columbia,* and its prohibition in the territories, and acts to increase the navy and army.

39. One of the most perilous expeditions of the war was that conducted by General Curtis, who had been sent to suppress the rebellion in Arkansas. As the troops sent were not reinforced, it became necessary to change their base of operations, which was done by General Curtis in a long and tiresome march from Batesville, on the White River, to Helena, on the Mississippi. In his march he was assailed by the enemy, who did all in their power to obstruct his progress and destroy his army. A series of skirmishes ensued, in all of which the Federal troops were victorious, and on the 11th of July, they took possession of the town of Helena, terminating their fatiguing march in the wilderness.

40. General Pope having been appointed to the command of the Army of Virginia, adopted a very strict line of policy, directing that all disloyal male citizens within the army lines should be arrested. Those who took the oath of allegiance were permitted to remain, but on their refusal were sent to the South beyond the furthest picket stations. General Halleck, an officer of great military experience, was now appointed to the command of the whole land forces as general-in-chief, and entered on the performance of his duties.

* The owners of slaves were compensated by the general government.

1862. 41. Martin Van Buren, the eighth President of the United States, died at his residence, Kinderhook, N. Y., July 24th, in the 80th year of his age. The usual honors were paid to his memory. During the month of August, great activity was exhibited in the recruiting department. New regiments were formed in all sections of the loyal states, and the President's call for three hundred thousand men was responded to, both in city and country, with great alacrity. Large sums were subscribed for the payment of bounties to the volunteers, besides that furnished to each enlisted soldier by the general government.

42. On the 9th of August, a severe battle was fought between the United States troops commanded by General Banks, and the rebel forces under General Jackson. General Bayard, who, with two regiments of cavalry, had been guarding the Rapidan, reported that the enemy had crossed the river in such force that he was compelled to retire, which he did slowly, disputing every foot of ground. At noon, General Crawford, with his brigade, marched to Bayard's relief, and occupied a position seven miles from Culpepper Court House, at Cedar Mountain.

43. At four in the afternoon, General Banks attacked the enemy under Jackson and Ewell. The battle was commenced with artillery, but two hours afterwards the action became general. Between seven and eight o'clock, General Pope and General McDowell arrived on the field, and, with additional troops, relieved Banks's exhausted columns. The firing was kept up until midnight, when it ceased, and both armies rested. The loss on both sides was considerable. Many officers were killed, and Generals Auger and Geary severely wounded, and General Banks disabled at the conclusion of the battle by an accident.

1862. Nothing was done by either army on the day succeeding the battle. On the 11th, General Jackson sent a flag of truce for permission to bury his dead remaining on the field, pending which he escaped with all his forces, crossing the Rapidan.*

44. Baton Rouge was assailed by a large body of troops led by Breckinridge and Lovell. It was defended by General Williams, and the enemy was repulsed after a severe contest, in which the brave General Williams and other valuable officers were killed. During the battle, the iron-clad ram Arkansas was attacked by the gunboat Essex, Commander Porter. His shot pierced the side of the enemy's vessel, which was abandoned and blown up.

45. While these events were transpiring, the Army of the Potomac, commanded by General McClellan, was moved quietly from its position at Harrison's Landing to Williamsburg, without loss of a man, or any of its stores or equipments. The movement was executed with consummate mastership. In consequence of this movement, Jackson, now reinforced by all the troops who were no longer needed in Richmond, endeavored to surprise General Pope, and capture or destroy his army, before a coalition with Generals Burnside or McClellan could be effected. General Pope, therefore, withdrew his whole command from Culpepper, and crossed the Rappahannock (August 20th).

46. On the following day there was considerable skirmishing, and the enemy made a number of attempts to cross the river. It was, however, deemed advisable to retire farther back, as the rebels were in immense force, and the river was no longer tenable. General Pope,

* Rapidan or Rapid Ann, a branch of the Rappahannock River, Virginia.

1862. therefore, moved with his command to Warrenton, and thence along the railroad to Manassas Junction. On the 27th, a severe action took place near Kettle Run, between General Hooker's division and the advance of Ewell's division, ending with the defeat of the latter.

47. On the 29th, a severe battle took place near the old battle-field of Bull Run, lasting all day. The Federal troops had a decided advantage, driving the enemy from the field in the latter part of the afternoon. But being reinforced, the enemy advanced, and General McDowell's troops were compelled to retreat. General Porter arrived at sunset, and checked the enemy's advance, allowing McDowell to withdraw with his weary and exhausted troops. The next day the whole army fell back to Centreville, thence to Fairfax, and the following day to Alexandria, perfectly exhausted with their harassing retreat.

48. A junction of the armies under Generals McClellan, Pope, and Burnside was now effected. General Pope withdrew, and General McClellan was appointed commander of the Army of Virginia. Great alarm was felt in every portion of country adjacent to this bold advance of the rebels. Washington was threatened, and an announcement made that the enemy intended the invasion of Maryland and Pennsylvania, and the capture of their principal cities. In the sixteen battles which marked this retreat of the Federal troops, much valuable property was lost, and many brave men fell in the attempt to stay the progress of the rebel armies, among whom may be enumerated, Generals Kearney, Stevens, and Taylor.

49. The rebel army did not long remain inactive. Their first movement was to cross the Potomac at three different fords, and march to the fertile portion of Maryland. They soon took possession of Frederick, seizing cattle, grain, and

1862. a great quantity of stores. They then sent a detachment to Hagerstown, which they occupied, threatening an advance into Pennsylvania through the fertile meadows and rich pastures of the Cumberland Valley.

50. On the 14th, a severe battle took place between the rebel army which had retreated from Frederick, and the advanced forces of General McClellan. The rebel army was posted on South Mountain, a part of the Catoclin range. The respective divisions of the Federal army were commanded by Generals Hooker, Franklin, and Reno. The fire of cannon and musketry was very severe for two hours, when the enemy wavered. A general charge now being ordered, the enemy was driven from the mountain and through Crampton Gap in a disordered mass, taking the road to Boonsboro', pursued by the victors for two miles, when darkness closed the contest. The loss was heavy on both sides, and the Union troops lost a brave officer, General Reno, who was killed in the early part of the engagement.

51. While this battle was in progress, the post at Harper's Ferry, under command of Colonel Miles, was attacked by a strong force of the enemy. Cannonading was kept up all day, and resumed early the following morning. About nine o'clock, Colonel Miles displayed a white flag, and surrendered the post to General Jackson. The garrison, more than eleven thousand in number, were paroled, and all the arms and stores given up to the rebels. Colonel Miles was mortally wounded, and died soon afterwards (September 15th).

52. The threatened invasion of Pennsylvania awakened a spirit of patriotism in its inhabitants, and in a short space of time fifty thousand militia were arrayed in arms, ready



BATTLE OF ANTIETAM.

1862. to meet the enemy. In the mean time the great battle of Antietam or Sharpsburg was fought, and the enemy abandoned Maryland, thus relieving Pennsylvania of all fears of the threatened invasion. The two armies met in hostile encounter on the 16th. The whole forces of each contending party were arrayed on the banks of the Antietam, a deep stream fordable at but few points. General Hooker crossed the creek, and attacked the enemy on the left, continuing the skirmish while daylight lasted. On the 17th, the battle commenced at daylight. The enemy were commanded by Generals Lee, Jackson, Hill, and Longstreet, the best commanders in the rebel service.

53. General Hooker sustained the whole brunt of the battle on the enemy's left for four hours, when he was severely wounded and compelled to leave the field. General Sumner, who held the centre, now took command, and was

1862. joined by General Franklin, with fresh troops.

The enemy was now vigorously assailed and driven back. On the right of the enemy, General Burnside had command, and sustained a severe conflict at the bridge, which was finally captured. Once over the creek a strong position was carried, but could not be held against the numbers brought forward by the enemy. Burnside, however, made a gallant stand, maintained his ground till darkness came on, when the firing ceased, terminating the battle with great loss on both sides. This severe conflict commenced at five in the morning and ended at seven in the evening, without pause or intermission.

54. On the night, of the 18th, the whole rebel force crossed the Potomac, closely pursued by General Pleasanton. Harper's Ferry was also evacuated, and the Union troops once more took possession of that post, and the adjacent heights. The battle of Antietam was considered by both parties as more important than any which preceded. On its issue depended the fate of Maryland, of Southern Pennsylvania, and the Federal capital. The strength of both armies was fully tested, and the rebel army compelled to evacuate Maryland. The losses were fearful. By the official report of the commanding general, it appears that the Union loss in killed, wounded, and missing was twelve thousand four hundred and sixty. The estimated loss of the enemy twenty-five thousand five hundred and forty-two.

55. The city of Natchez was bombarded by Commodore Porter with his iron-clad vessel, the Essex, and obliged to raise the American flag, and the town of Bayou Sara was burned. In Mississippi a battle took place near the village of Iuka, between General Rosecrans and the rebel General Price, which resulted in the rout of the enemy. The

1862. rebels captured the town of Mumfordsville, Kentucky. The garrison made a gallant defence, but were overpowered by superior numbers. Louisville was threatened, and great fears for its safety were entertained by the inhabitants. General Bragg had gathered a large army, and aimed at the subjugation of the whole state. But he was closely followed by General Buell, who drove him out of Mumfordsville, pursued him a long distance, and then with his army marched to Louisville, relieving the inhabitants from the dread of a rebel attack.

56. After the battles of Maryland and the invading army's evacuation of that state, several reverses befell the Union troops. One was the assault on a detachment sent to reconnoitre near Shepherdstown, Va., which resulted in the defeat of the Federal arms. In this engagement the Corn Exchange Regiment of Pennsylvania suffered very severely. Other disasters followed, the most mortifying of which was a sudden incursion into Pennsylvania by a body of rebel cavalry, who captured the towns of Mercersburg and Chambersburg, and escaped with their plunder before any troops could harass or intercept them.

57. Early in October, the enemy under command of Van Dorn, Price, and Lovell made an attack on the Union troops at Corinth, Miss. The battle commenced on the morning of the 3d, and continued through the day. It was renewed on the following morning, the enemy firing with shot and shell. At nine o'clock they ceased firing, and advanced rapidly in heavy columns on the town. The engagement soon became general, the batteries opening a destructive fire on the enemy, who, however, pressed forward with reckless daring, broke through the lines of infantry, and entered the streets of Corinth. But now the Union soldiers, after a desperate conflict, rolled back the

1862. tide of battle, and the enemy fled, attacked in their retreat by Generals Ord and Hurlbut, and closely followed by General Rosecrans. At the Hatchie River the fighting was renewed, and ended with the complete defeat and dispersion of the rebel army, by General Rosecrans and his brave soldiers, who continued the pursuit of the flying enemy until recalled by order of Major-General Grant.

58. On the 9th of October, a battle was fought between the Union troops under command of General Buell, and the rebel troops under General Bragg, at Perryville, Ky. The conflict commenced early in the morning, and continued through the day with varied success. At sundown, however, the firing ceased, and the enemy withdrew from the ground, leaving the Union troops in possession. The loss was large on both sides, and, although the enemy retired, the Union troops gained no advantages deserving the name of victory. After this battle the troops of Generals Bragg and Kirby Smith evacuated Kentucky, escaping across the mountains into Tennessee.

59. After the battle of Antietam nothing decisive took place in Virginia for some weeks. The Union army followed the retreating rebel forces from Maryland, and several skirmishes and minor engagements occurred. Of these we may notice a conflict at Barbus, between cavalry troops, resulting in the defeat of the rebels; a successful reconnoissance by General Geary; the capture of Warrenton by General Reynolds; and the pursuit of the enemy by General Pleasanton. On the 8th of November, the government relieved General McClellan from command of the army, appointing General Burnside as his successor.

60. The Army of the South sustained a severe loss in the death of Major-General O. M. Mitchell, its commander.

1862. He died on the 30th of October, at Beaufort, S. C.

General Mitchell had rendered very important services during the war, was much beloved by his soldiers, and his death was deeply lamented by his gallant army. The important commercial town of Galveston, in Texas, surrendered to Commodore Renshaw, commander of the fleet sent against it. The fort commanding the Sabine Pass, on the coast of Texas, was captured by a fleet under command of Captain Crocker. After the surrender of the fort he landed a party, who, under cover of the guns of the steamer, captured two camps, burned a bridge and a large number of buildings used as barracks.

61. In Louisiana, an expedition under command of General Weitzel encountered the rebel forces at Labadie ville, and put them to rout after a short contest. Among those slain in this battle was the colonel in command of the enemy. General Burnside, after his appointment to the command of the Army of Virginia, continued to make a steady progress. By the middle of November, his large army arrived at the Rappahannock, opposite Fredericksburg. On the 21st, by his orders, General Sumner sent a communication to the civil authorities demanding the surrender of the town, and threatening to shell it should the demand be refused, allowing sixteen hours for the removal of the women and children. This threat, however, was not enforced.

62. On the reassembling of Congress (December 1st), the President in his message presented in forcible language the evils which would attend a separation of the states, declaring that such a measure "would multiply and not mitigate evils among us." With a view, therefore, of preventing this strife, the President recommended such an amendment to the Constitution as would grant a compensa-

tion to those states which should abolish slavery.

1862. By a previous Act of Congress and the President's Proclamation, the slaves of rebels are declared to be forever free on and after the 1st of January.

63. The Secretary of the Navy in his annual report, after reciting the operations of the naval forces during the past year, speaks thus of the depredations of a piratical privateer: * "With the exception of the rebel armed steamer Sumter, no other armed vessel has plundered our commerce, or inflicted injury on our countrymen within a recent period, when a steamer known as † 290 or Alabama, built and fitted out in England—a vessel that had not been in any port or visited any waters but those of Great Britain—went forth from the shores of that country ravaging, sinking, burning, and destroying the property of our merchants, who were totally unprepared for such assault and devastation."

64. The Secretary of War stated that the portion of the United States which had been the scene of military operations, was divided into ten departments, and that the entire force constituting these armies amounted to more than eight hundred thousand men, fully armed and equipped. During the year several tribes of Indians of the North-West, incited by rebel emissaries, made a sudden attack on the peaceful inhabitants of Minnesota, killing indiscriminately men, women, and children. The savages were attacked by a volunteer force and defeated in several battles on the upper waters of the Minnesota River.

65. In Mississippi the rebel forces deserted their fortifications and fled to Oxford, pursued by the troops belonging

* Secretary Welles's Official Report.

† So called from being owned by 290 persons.

1862. to General Grant's army. In Arkansas a battle ensued between the troops under General Curtis and the enemy under General Hindman. General Blunt was posted near Cane Hill when attacked by the enemy, twenty-five thousand in number, who attempted a flank movement to prevent the arrival of General Herron's forces, who were approaching by forced marches. The following day the enemy attacked General Herron, near Fayetteville. The battle continued for three hours, when General Blunt came up, effecting a union with General Herron. At night the Union troops remained on the field, and the enemy retreated across the Boston Mountain.

66. In Hartsville, Tennessee, a battle took place between the advanced Union forces and the rebel troops under General Morgan, the guerilla leader. The battle lasted more than an hour, when Colonel Moore, the leader of the Union troops, was compelled to surrender his entire brigade to the enemy. On the 3d of December, General Geary, with a body of troops, marched from Harper's Ferry upon Winchester, and demanded its surrender. The town was at once given up. He had skirmishes with the enemy at Charlestown and Berryville, compelling them to retreat, capturing a number of horses and mules, and taking possession of a quantity of military stores.

67. We left General Burnside and the Army of the Potomac on the Rappahannock River, opposite Fredericksburg. That vigilant commander had, in the mean time, made every preparation for advance, and on the morning of the 11th of December, the engineers commenced their work on three bridges in front of the city. During the progress of the work, the rebels, concealed in houses, opened a destructive fire. The Union troops then began a fierce cannonading on the city, which had the effect of driving

back the assailants, and the work on the bridges
1862. was again commenced. But it was found necessary to send over a party in boats to dislodge the rebels, who had again opened fire. This was effected, the bridges completed, and the army began to cross the river.

68. The following morning the troops continued the crossing, and soon had possession of Fredericksburg. The enemy, posted on a ridge, opened a fire on the troops in the city, but their battery was silenced, and firing ceased for the day. On the 13th a general attack was made on the enemy, who were posted on a range of hills near the city. On the right, General Sumner sent General French's division to assail the enemy's works in the rear of the city. When the troops emerged from the streets, the enemy's batteries opened on them with a terrific fire. The troops, however, steadily advanced until within a short distance of the crest of hills on which were the enemy's breastworks. Here a perfect storm of shot and shell hailed upon them, checking further advance. They, however, maintained their ground till their ammunition was expended, when they were relieved by General Hancock's division.

69. The battle-ground was held for two hours by General Hancock's troops, who were in turn relieved by General Howard. His troops behaved with the gallantry which marked the brave men who preceded them, but it did not avail against the strong position and deadly fire of the enemy. General Franklin, who commanded the attack on the left, was more successful, driving the enemy some distance, and capturing several hundred prisoners.* The battle was continued with great daring and courage, until

* General Reynolds, of Franklin's army corps, commenced the battle.

1862. darkness closed over the combatants. The Union troops lost a large number in killed and wounded. Among the officers who fell were General Bayard, of the United States cavalry, and General Jackson, of the Pennsylvania Reserves.

70. After the battle of Fredericksburg, and the failure of the Union forces in dislodging the rebels from their strongholds, General Burnside removed ~~his~~ whole army across the Rappahannock. This movement was commenced in the night of December 15th, and accomplished successfully, and without the loss of a single man. General Burnside, in a letter to the general-in-chief, states the causes of failure, exonerates the government from blame, and assumes all the responsibility. He states that the number of killed was eleven hundred and fifty-two, wounded seven thousand, a large number slightly, and nine hundred prisoners, who were paroled and exchanged for an equal number taken from the enemy.

Questions on Events of 1862.—1. What battle in Kentucky? Give a description. Who was killed?

2. What fort on the Tennessee River was attacked? To whom was the surrender made? What occurred after the capture? How were the troops received? What death is recorded? Why was Senator Bright expelled?

3. What was done by General Burnside? Who commanded the fleet? What battle ensued? Who commanded the detachments? What were captured? What was done by Commodore Goldsborough?

4. What towns were surrendered? What fort was attacked? By whom was it taken?

5. How many prisoners were taken? Who commanded the Federal troops? What is said of Floyd? Of Nashville? What was done by the division under General Banks? By Colonel Geary?

6. When and where was a naval battle? By what vessels was

the United States fleet attacked? What was done by the Merri-mac? What is said of the Minnesota? What vessel came to its assistance?

7. Describe the contest of March 9th. What vessels were lost to the United States? What is said of the Monitor?

8. What towns were captured by Commodore Dupont? What forts? Who commanded the Army of the South-West? What generals were opposed to him? When and where did the battle commence? To what place was it transferred? How long did it continue, and with what result?

9. What places were abandoned in Virginia? Who commanded the rebel troops in the battle near Strasburg? The Federal troops? What number on each side? Describe the battle.

10. What place was evacuated March 13th? Where was a strong fortification? Why was it so named? What was done by Commodore Foote? By General Pope? How long did the siege continue? What were captured?

11. What was done by General Burnside? Describe the battle. What were captured? How did the chief part of the rebels escape? By whom were the Federal troops commanded? What town was evacuated?

12. What is said of St. Augustine? Who took possession? What is said of Fort Marion? Jacksonville? What was done by Johnston and Beauregard? What division was first attacked? What is said of General Sherman's division? General McClellan's division? What was done by the gunboats that evening? What was the numerical force of each army?

13. Who renewed the battle the following day? What was done by General Nelson? General Buell? General Grant? What was the result? What generals were killed? Who was made prisoner?

14. What forts were bombarded and taken? What city was surrendered? To what naval officer? Who took military possession? What is said of Baton Rouge?

15. What had the enemy done to prevent the passage of the fleet? What forts were bombarded? What was done by Commodore Farragut? Who continued the assault on the forts? When were they surrendered? In what did the naval engagement result?

16. Relate the achievements of General Mitchell. General Pope.

17. What was done by General McClellan early in April? Where did the troops land? What had the enemy done? What preparations were made by the United States troops? What took place in the night of May 3d? What did General McClellan do the next day?

18. Where were the enemy intrenched? Which division was attacked? Describe the battle. What was done by General Hancock's brigade? What occurred that night? The following morning? Where did General Franklin land? Whose brigade was actively engaged? What did the enemy do?

19. Give an account of an attack on Sewall's Point. What is said of the Merrimac? What is said of President Lincoln? What was done by General Wool? Describe the march and its result. What became of the Merrimac?

20. What is said of the battle at Lebanon? What was done by the gunboats on the James River? What prevented their success? What occurred during the action?

21. What town was captured? What places abandoned by the enemy? Describe the battle at McDowell. Who commanded the forces? To what place did the United States troops fall back?

22. What did General McClellan do after the battle of West Point? What river was crossed by the troops? What took place at Front Royal? Who commanded? Describe the battle. What is said of Colonel Kenley?

23. Whose division was attacked the following morning? Who commanded the enemy? Describe the retreat. Where did engagements take place during the retreat? What number of troops had the enemy? General Banks? What is said of the losses? How many miles did the army retreat?

24. What is said of the Confederate army? What was done by General Fremont? By Jackson?

25. Where was General Halleck? Relate the events of May 28th. What was done by the rebels? What did they lose?

26. What battle was fought? What generals were engaged in the contest? Describe the battle.

27. Where was the rebel army the following morning? When was the battle renewed? What was done by the troops under General Hooker? Describe the charge. What is said of Richardson's brigade? Of the enemy? The Federal troops?

28. Give an account of Monday's battle. What is this battle called? What is said of it?

29. What forts and city were evacuated? What is said of Fort Barrancas? Where did flag-officer Davis arrive in June? What engagement ensued? What was done by the mayor? What was done by General Negley?

30. Describe the operations of General Fremont. When and where was a battle? To what place did the rebels retreat? What bridge was here?

31. Who sent a detachment to guard the bridge? What was done by Jackson's army? Who commanded the Federal troops? What was the number in Carroll's detachment? How far did they retreat? What was now done by the enemy?

32. What river was ascended by gunboats? For what purpose? What was done by Colonel Fitch? What fearful disaster occurred? How many were killed by this explosion?

33. What is said of the battle of White Oak Swamp? What did General McClellan now do? The enemy? What battle ensued?

34. What was now done by the Federal troops? Describe the battle of Gaines's Mills. By whom was General Porter reinforced?

35. Describe the further movements of the troops. What was done with the sick and wounded? Describe the retreat, and the battle near Savage Station.

36. At what place did the enemy commence the attack? To what place did the Union troops withdraw? Describe the battle of Malvern Hills. What is said of General McClellan's withdrawal?

37. Describe the battle of James's Island. Under whom was the Army of Virginia placed? Who commanded the divisions? How many additional troops were now called into service by the President?

38. What important acts were passed during the session of Congress? What is said of the slave-owners? (Note.)

39. Who was sent to suppress rebellion in Arkansas? Describe his retreat.

40. What was directed by General Pope? What is said of General Halleck?

41. When and at what age did Martin Van Buren die? What is said of recruiting? What inducements were offered recruits?

42. Where did a battle take place? Who commanded the respective forces? Who commanded the cavalry? What general came to his relief?

43. Describe the battle of Cedar Mountain. Name all the generals of divisions. What officers were wounded? What was done by General Jackson?

44. By whom was Baton Rouge assailed? By whom defended? Describe the naval engagement.

45. Describe General McClellan's movements. Jackson's. What did General Pope do?

46. What occurred at the Rappahannock? To what places did General Pope remove? What battle took place?

47. Describe the battle near Bull Run. What is said of General Porter? To what place did the army move on the day following? Where did the retreat terminate?

48. What junction was effected? Who succeeded General Pope as commander? What places were threatened? How many battles had occurred during General Pope's retreat? What generals were killed?

49. What did the rebel army now do? What towns did they capture?

50. Where did a battle take place? Who commanded the divisions of the Federal army? Describe the battle. What is said of General Reno?

51. What strong post was attacked? By whom was it surrendered? How many became prisoners?

52. What effect was produced in Pennsylvania? What great battle followed? What was done by General Hooker on the 16th? When did the battle commence on the 17th? Who commanded the enemy? What is said of them?

53. What is said of General Hooker? Sumner? Franklin? Describe General Burnside's movements. When did this battle commence, and when terminate?

54. What was done on the night of the 18th? By whom were the rebels pursued? What places were now occupied by the Union troops? What is said of the battle? What were the estimated losses?

55. What occurred at Natchez? What battle in Mississippi? Name the commanders. What town was captured by the rebels? What was done by General Bragg? General Buell?

56. Where were the troops defeated? What regiment suffered most? Describe the rebel incursion into Pennsylvania.

57. When and where was an attack made on the Union troops? By what generals? Describe the battle. By whom were the rebels attacked in their retreat? By whom followed? Where was the battle renewed? By whom were the troops recalled?

58. What battle took place? Who commanded? Describe the battle. What troops evacuated Kentucky?

59. What took place in Virginia after the battle of Antietam? Who succeeded General McClellan in command of the army?

60. When and where did General Mitchell die? What places were captured in Texas? Name the commanders.

61. Give an account of General Weitzell's expedition. What was done by orders from General Burnside? What was threatened?

62. What did the President recommend?

63. What is said of the Alabama? By what other name is that vessel known? Why was it so called? (Note.)

64. What statement is made by the Secretary of War? Give an account of the Indians of the North-West. What state suffered most?

65. What took place in Mississippi? Describe the battle of Fayetteville. Who commanded the armies? Name the Union generals engaged?

66. What was the result of the battle in Hartsville? What was done by General Geary? What skirmishes was he engaged in?

67. What did General Burnside do? Describe the crossing of the river.

68. What city was taken? What was done by the enemy? When was a general attack made? Who assailed on the right? Describe the battle. Who came to French's relief?

69. Who relieved General Howard? Who commanded on the left? Who commenced the battle? What officers were killed?

70. What did General Burnside do after the battle? What number were killed, wounded, and prisoners?

781

1868

1864

W.C.R.

1876

